

Advantage™ EDBC® OpenSQL

Reference Guide



Computer Associates™

This documentation and related computer software program (hereinafter referred to as the "Documentation") is for the end user's informational purposes only and is subject to change or withdrawal by Computer Associates International, Inc. ("CA") at any time.

This documentation may not be copied, transferred, reproduced, disclosed or duplicated, in whole or in part, without the prior written consent of CA. This documentation is proprietary information of CA and protected by the copyright laws of the United States and international treaties.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, licensed users may print a reasonable number of copies of this documentation for their own internal use, provided that all CA copyright notices and legends are affixed to each reproduced copy. Only authorized employees, consultants, or agents of the user who are bound by the confidentiality provisions of the license for the software are permitted to have access to such copies.

This right to print copies is limited to the period during which the license for the product remains in full force and effect. Should the license terminate for any reason, it shall be the user's responsibility to return to CA the reproduced copies or to certify to CA that same have been destroyed.

To the extent permitted by applicable law, CA provides this documentation "as is" without warranty of any kind, including without limitation, any implied warranties of merchantability, fitness for a particular purpose or noninfringement. In no event will CA be liable to the end user or any third party for any loss or damage, direct or indirect, from the use of this documentation, including without limitation, lost profits, business interruption, goodwill, or lost data, even if CA is expressly advised of such loss or damage.

The use of any product referenced in this documentation and this documentation is governed by the end user's applicable license agreement.

The manufacturer of this documentation is Computer Associates International, Inc.

Provided with "Restricted Rights" as set forth in 48 C.F.R. Section 12.212, 48 C.F.R. Sections 52.227-19(c)(1) and (2) or DFARS Section 252.227-7013(c)(1)(ii) or applicable successor provisions.

© 2001 Computer Associates International, Inc.

All trademarks, trade names, service marks, and logos referenced herein belong to their respective companies.



Contents

Chapter 1: Introduction

Conventions	1-2
-------------------	-----

Chapter 2: Overview of OpenSQL

What is OpenSQL?	2-1
EDBC Products	2-1
Embedded OpenSQL	2-2
Building Embedded OpenSQL Programs	2-2
Retrieving Status Information	2-2
Specifying Parameters at Run Time	2-2
Differences between Embedded and Interactive OpenSQL	2-3
Features	2-3
Object Names	2-4
Regular and Delimited Identifiers	2-5
Restrictions on Identifiers	2-5
Case Sensitivity of Identifiers	2-7
Comment Delimiters	2-7
Statement Terminators	2-7
Correlation Names	2-8
OpenSQL Limits	2-10

Chapter 3: OpenSQL Data Types

Character Data Types	3-1
The Character Data Type	3-2
The Varchar Data Type	3-2
Numeric Data Types	3-3
Integer Data Types	3-3
The Decimal Data Type	3-4
The Floating Point Data Types	3-4

Abstract Data Type	3-5
The Date Data Type	3-5
Absolute Date Input Formats	3-6
Absolute Time Input Formats	3-8
Combined Date and Time Input	3-8
Date and Time Display Formats	3-9
Storage Formats of Data Types	3-9
Literals	3-10
String Literals	3-10
Numeric Literals	3-10
Floating Point Literals	3-11
OpenSQL Constants	3-12
Nulls	3-12
Nulls and Comparisons	3-12
Nulls and Aggregate Functions	3-13

Chapter 4: Elements of OpenSQL Statements

Operators	4-1
Arithmetic Operators	4-1
Comparison Operators	4-2
Logical Operators	4-2
Operations	4-3
Assignment Operations	4-3
Character String Assignments	4-4
Numeric Assignments	4-5
Date Assignments	4-5
Null Assignments	4-5
Arithmetic Operations	4-6
Default Type Conversion	4-6
Arithmetic Operations on Decimal Data Types	4-7
Aggregate Functions	4-8
The Count Function and Nulls	4-9
The Group by Clause with Aggregate Functions	4-9
Restrictions on the Use of Aggregate Functions	4-10
Aggregate Functions and Decimal Data	4-10
Expressions	4-10
Predicates	4-11
The Like Predicate	4-11
The Between Predicate	4-13
The In Predicate	4-13

The Any-or-All Predicate	4-14
The Exists Predicate	4-15
The Is null Predicate	4-16
Search Conditions	4-16
Subqueries	4-17

Chapter 5: Embedded OpenSQL

Syntax of an Embedded OpenSQL Statement	5-2
Structure of Embedded OpenSQL Programs	5-2
Host Language Variables	5-4
Declaring Variables	5-5
The Include Statement	5-5
Variable Usage	5-6
Variable Structures	5-6
The Dclgen Utility	5-7
Indicator Variables	5-8
Null Indicators and Data Retrieval	5-8
Using Null Indicators to Assign Nulls	5-9
Indicator Variables and Character Data Retrieval	5-10
Null Indicator Arrays and Host Structures	5-10
Data Manipulation with Cursors	5-11
Declaring a Cursor	5-12
Opening Cursors	5-12
Open Cursors and Transaction Processing	5-13
Fetching the Data	5-13
Fetching Rows Inserted by Other Queries	5-14
Using Cursors to Update Data	5-14
Using Cursors to Delete Data	5-15
Closing Cursors	5-16
Summary of Cursor Positioning	5-17

Chapter 6: Dynamic OpenSQL

The SQLDA	6-2
Structure of the SQLDA	6-2
Including the SQLDA in a Program	6-3
Describe Statement and the SQLDA	6-4
Data Type Codes	6-4
The Using Clause	6-5

Dynamic OpenSQL Statements	6-5
Execute Immediate Statement	6-6
Prepare and Execute Statements	6-6
Describe Statement	6-7
Executing a Dynamic Non-select Statement	6-8
Using Execute Immediate to Execute a Non-select Statement	6-8
Preparing and Executing a Non-select Statement	6-9
Executing a Dynamic Select Statement	6-10
When the Result Column Data Types are Known	6-11
When the Result Column Data Types are Unknown	6-12
Preparing and Describing the Select Statement	6-13
Analyzing the Sqlvar Elements	6-14
Executing the Select with Execute Immediate	6-16
Using a Cursor to Retrieve the Results	6-17

Chapter 7: OpenSQL Features

Transactions	7-1
Controlling Transactions	7-2
Committing Transactions	7-2
Aborting Statements and Transactions	7-3
Effects of Aborting Transactions	7-3
Interrupting Transactions	7-3
Retrieving Status Information	7-3
The Dbmsinfo Function	7-4
The Inquire_sql Statement	7-5
The SQL Communications Area (SQLCA)	7-5
Error Handling	7-7
The SQLSTATE Variable	7-7
Local and Generic Errors	7-8
Reading an OpenSQL Error Message	7-9
Displaying an Error Message	7-9
Handling Errors in Embedded Applications	7-10
Obtaining Error Information from the SQLCA	7-10
Trapping Errors Using the Whenever Statement	7-11
Defining an Error Handler	7-12
Obtaining Error Information Using Inquire Statements	7-13
Suppressing Error Messages	7-14
Specifying Program Termination on Errors	7-14
Handling Deadlock	7-15
Non-cursor Template	7-15

Single Cursor Template	7-15
Master/Detail Template	7-16
Multiple Session Connections	7-17
Connecting to Multiple Sessions	7-17
Switching Sessions	7-18
Terminating a Session	7-18
Multiple Sessions and the SQLCA	7-19
Multiple Sessions and the DBMS	7-19
Multiple Session Examples	7-20
Database Procedures	7-21
Creating Database Procedures	7-21
Registering Database Procedures	7-21
Executing Database Procedures	7-22
DBMS Extensions	7-23
The With Clause	7-23
Syntax of the With Clause	7-24
Examples	7-25

Chapter 8: OpenSQL Statements

SQL Version	8-1
SQL Statements Context	8-1
Extended Statements	8-2
Begin Declare Section	8-2
Syntax	8-2
Description	8-3
Example	8-3
Close	8-3
Syntax	8-3
Description	8-4
Permissions	8-4
Example	8-4
Commit	8-4
Syntax	8-4
Description	8-5
Embedded Usage	8-5
Permissions	8-5
Example	8-5
Connect	8-6
Syntax	8-6
Description	8-6

Permissions	8-8
Examples	8-8
Create Index	8-8
Syntax	8-9
Description	8-9
Embedded Usage	8-10
Example	8-10
Create Table	8-10
Syntax	8-10
Description	8-11
Embedded Usage	8-11
Specifying the Column Names, Data Types, and Lengths	8-11
Using the Create table...as Syntax	8-12
Examples	8-12
Create View	8-13
Syntax	8-13
Description	8-13
Embedded Usage	8-15
Example	8-15
Declare Cursor	8-15
Syntax	8-15
Description	8-16
Examples	8-19
Declare Statement	8-22
Syntax	8-22
Description	8-22
Example	8-22
Declare Table	8-23
Syntax	8-23
Description	8-23
Example	8-23
Delete	8-24
Syntax	8-24
Description	8-24
Embedded Usage	8-24
Non-cursor Delete	8-25
Cursor Delete	8-25
Example	8-26
Describe	8-26
Syntax	8-26
Description	8-26

Direct Execute Immediate	8-27
Syntax	8-28
Description	8-28
Disconnect	8-28
Syntax	8-28
Description	8-28
Examples	8-29
Drop	8-29
Syntax	8-29
Description	8-30
Embedded Usage	8-30
Examples	8-30
End Declare Section	8-30
Syntax	8-30
Description	8-31
Endselect	8-31
Syntax	8-31
Description	8-31
Example	8-32
Execute	8-32
Syntax	8-32
Description	8-32
Examples	8-34
Execute Immediate	8-35
Syntax	8-35
Description	8-35
Example	8-37
Execute Procedure	8-38
Syntax	8-38
Description	8-38
Passing Parameters - Non-Dynamic Version	8-39
Passing Parameters - Dynamic Version	8-39
Permissions	8-41
Locking	8-41
Performance	8-41
Examples	8-41
Fetch	8-42
Syntax	8-43
Description	8-43
Examples	8-44
Help	8-45
Syntax	8-45

Description	8-45
Examples	8-46
Include	8-47
Syntax	8-47
Description	8-47
Examples	8-48
Inquire_sql	8-48
Syntax	8-48
Description	8-48
Types of Inquiries	8-49
Example	8-52
Insert	8-52
Syntax	8-52
Description	8-53
Embedded Usage	8-53
Examples	8-54
Open	8-55
Syntax	8-55
Description	8-55
Examples	8-56
Prepare	8-57
Syntax	8-57
Description	8-57
Example	8-60
Rollback	8-61
Syntax	8-61
Description	8-61
Embedded Usage	8-61
Performance	8-61
Select (interactive)	8-62
Syntax	8-62
Description	8-62
Select Statement Clauses	8-63
Query Evaluation	8-63
The Select Clause	8-64
The From Clause	8-66
Specifying Tables and Views	8-66
The Where Clause	8-67
Simple Where Clauses	8-67
Joins	8-68
Join Relationships	8-69
Subqueries	8-69

The Order by Clause	8-69
The Group by Clause	8-71
The Having Clause	8-72
The Union Clause	8-72
Examples	8-73
Select (embedded)	8-74
Syntax	8-74
Description	8-75
Non-Cursor Select	8-75
Select Loops	8-75
Retrieving Values into Host Language Variables	8-76
Host Language Variables in the Union Clause	8-77
Repeated Queries	8-77
Cursor Select	8-77
Error Handling	8-78
Embedded Usage	8-78
Examples	8-78
Set	8-81
Syntax	8-81
Description	8-81
The Set Autocommit Option	8-81
Set_sql	8-82
Syntax	8-82
Description	8-82
Update	8-85
Syntax	8-85
Description	8-85
Embedded Usage	8-86
Cursor Updates	8-86
Examples	8-87
Whenever	8-88
Syntax	8-88
Description	8-88
Examples	8-90

Chapter 9: Extended Statements

Create Schema	9-1
Syntax	9-1
Description	9-2
Restrictions	9-3

Embedded Usage	9-3
Permissions	9-3
Example	9-3
Create Table (extended)	9-4
Syntax	9-4
Description	9-5
Column Specifications	9-5
Column Defaults and Nullability	9-6
Default Values	9-6
Nullability	9-7
Constraints	9-8
Using	9-12
Embedded Usage	9-13
Permissions	9-13
Examples	9-13
Grant	9-15
Syntax	9-15
Description	9-15
The Grant All Privileges Option	9-16
The Grant Option	9-17
Embedded Usage	9-18
Permissions	9-18
Examples	9-18
Revoke	9-18
Syntax	9-19
Description	9-19
Revoking the Grant Option	9-19
Restrict versus Cascade	9-20
Embedded Usage	9-21
Permissions	9-21
Example	9-21
Select	9-21
Syntax	9-22

Chapter 10: OpenSQL Standard Catalogs

Standard Catalog Interface	10-2
The iidbcapabilities Catalog	10-2
The iidbconstants Catalog	10-5
The iitables Catalog	10-5
The iicolumns Catalog	10-11

The iiphysical_tables Catalog	10-13
The iiviews Catalog	10-15
The iiindexes Catalog	10-15
The iiindex_columns Catalog	10-16
The iialt_columns Catalog	10-17
The iistats Catalog	10-17
The iihistograms Catalog	10-18
The iiprocedures Catalog	10-18
The iiregistrations Catalog	10-19
The iisynonyms Catalog	10-20
Standard Catalogs	10-20
Mandatory Catalogs with Entries Required	10-20
Mandatory Catalogs without Entries Required	10-21

Appendix A: Keywords

Keyword List	A-1
ISO SQL Keywords	A-18

Appendix B: Terminal Monitor

Accessing the Terminal Monitor	B-1
The Query Buffer	B-2
The Terminal Monitor Commands	B-3
Messages and Prompts	B-5
Character Input and Output	B-6
Help	B-7
Aborting the Editor (VMS only)	B-7

Appendix C: Generic Error Codes

SQLSTATE Values	C-1
Generic Error Codes	C-7
Generic Error Data Exception Subcodes	C-10
SQLSTATE and Equivalent Generic Errors	C-11

Index

Introduction

The *Advantage EDBC OpenSQL Reference Guide* describes OpenSQL, and provides detailed descriptions of all OpenSQL statements, examples of the correct use of OpenSQL statements and features, and details to help you use OpenSQL effectively. This guide is designed for programmers who write applications that are portable across all database servers, and is intended as a reference guide for the database system administrator. This guide is divided into the following chapters:

Chapter 1, Introduction, details the conventions and symbols used in presenting the information in this guide. Since they enhance your understanding of this guide, it is highly recommended that you familiarize yourself with them.

Chapter 2, Overview of OpenSQL, introduces the basics of OpenSQL including an overview of interactive and embedded OpenSQL statements. This chapter also describes the features and limits of OpenSQL and the database management system.

Chapter 3, OpenSQL Data Types, describes the various OpenSQL data types along with data type storage formats, literals, and OpenSQL constants.

Chapter 4, Elements of OpenSQL Statements, details elements of OpenSQL statements including operators, functions, operations, and queries.

Chapter 5, Embedded OpenSQL, describes embedded OpenSQL statements.

Chapter 6, Dynamic OpenSQL, discusses dynamic programming including SQLDA and dynamic OpenSQL statements.

Chapter 7, OpenSQL Features, describes the features of OpenSQL including database procedures, rules, multiple session connections, database events, and large objects.

Chapter 8, OpenSQL Statements, describes the purpose, syntax, and use of individual OpenSQL statements.

Chapter 9, Extended Statements, lists statements and extensions that may be available in OpenSQL.

Chapter 10, OpenSQL Standard Catalogs, describes the Standard Interface catalogs.

Appendix A, Keywords, lists keywords and the context in which they are reserved.

Appendix B, Terminal Monitor, describes invoking the line-based version of the Terminal Monitor and issuing queries interactively.

Appendix C, Generic Error Codes, lists generic error codes, SQLSTATE values, and generic error data exception subcodes.

Conventions

This guide employs several conventions, described in this section, to make locating and identifying information easier.

Cross References

The following conventions are used to refer you to other relevant parts of the documentation set:

- Guide name in italic:
See the *System Administrator's Guide*.
- Chapter name in double quotes:
See "Creating Databases" in this guide.
- Section name as it appears within this guide:
See the Rules for Naming Databases section.

Operating Environment Differences

This guide documents OpenSQL for all platforms on which it is available. The following symbols indicate differences that depend on the operating environment:

Win32

Information is specific to Microsoft Windows NT or Windows 95/98. ■

UNIX

This text is specific to UNIX. ■

VMS

This text is specific to the VMS operating system. ■

In each case, the ■ symbol indicates the end of the operating environment-specific text.

Key Names

The names of keys, such as Enter, Ctrl, and Del, appear in the document as they do on most keyboards. When referring to the four arrow keys as a group, they are referred to as Direction keys; however, the name of each Direction key (for example, Up arrow and Left arrow) is used when referring to them individually.

Key Combinations	Whenever two keys are joined together with a plus sign (+), such as Ctrl+R, hold down the first key while pressing the second key to complete the command. Release the second key first.
Key Sequences	When keys are separated by a comma, press them in the sequence indicated. For example, the Alt+E, C keystroke sequence indicates that you should hold down the Alt key while pressing the E key, release them both, then press and release the C key.
Keyboard Function	This guide refers to a keyboard function (for example, Menu key) rather than to an actual key (for example, F1). Your terminal model determines the actual key that you use to perform a specific function.
Terminology	This guide observes the following distinction in terminology: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ A <i>command</i> is an operation that is executed at the operating system level. An extended operation invoked by a command is often referred to as a <i>utility</i>. ■ A <i>statement</i> is an operation that is embedded within a program or execute interactively from the Terminal Monitor. <p>A statement can be written in a host programming language (such as C), or a database query language (SQL).</p>
Syntax and User Input	When representing syntax and user input, the following conventions are used:

Convention	Usage
Boldface	Indicates any text that must be typed as shown.
<i>Italics</i>	Represent a variable name or placeholder for which you must supply an actual value—this convention is used in explanatory text, as well as syntax.
Courier Typeface	Indicates text that is displayed on your screen, such as prompts and messages. For example, the following statement is a prompt: Enter database name:
Case Sensitivity	System command and environment variable names may be case-sensitive, depending on the requirements of your operating system.
[] (square brackets)	Used to enclose an optional item.
{ } (curly braces)	Used to enclose an optional item that you can repeat as many times as appropriate.
(vertical bar)	Used between items in a list to indicate that you should choose one of the items.



Convention	Usage
% (percent sign)	At the beginning of a command line, indicates commands that are entered at the C-shell command line prompt. It should not be entered by the user.
\$ (dollar sign)	At the beginning of a command line, indicates commands that are entered at the Bourne-shell command line prompt. It should not be entered by the user. Note: This symbol is also used as a literal part of syntax when referring to environment variable names. When it appears anywhere except at the beginning of a command line, it must be entered exactly as shown. ❏

Example

The following example illustrates some of these conventions:

```
create table tablename (columnname format
                        {columnname format})
                        [with_clause]
```

Embedded OpenSQL Examples

Examples of embedded OpenSQL code provided in this guide use the following conventions:

Convention	Usage
Margins	None are used.
;(semicolon)	Represents the statement terminator.
Labels	Appear on a line of their own and are followed by a colon (:). Control passes to the statement following the label.
Host language comments	Indicated by the OpenSQL comment indicator; for example: <code>/* This is a comment. */</code>
' ' (single quotes)	Surround character strings.
pseudocode	Represents host language statements within embedded OpenSQL. For example: <code>exec sql begin declaration;</code> <code> <i>variable declarations</i></code> <code>exec sql end declaration;</code>

To determine the correct syntax for your programming language, refer to the appropriate embedded SQL companion guide.

Overview of OpenSQL

This chapter introduces the basics of OpenSQL including an overview of various EDBC products and available OpenSQL features.

What is OpenSQL?

SQL (Structured Query Language) is a language that allows you to manipulate and maintain data in a relational database. OpenSQL allows you to create applications that run on EDBC servers.

EDBC OpenSQL statements can be used in the following contexts:

- Terminal Monitor
- Embedded OpenSQL programs
- Applications built with ODBC, OLEDB, or ADO
- Applications built with API

Use OpenSQL statements in the interactive Terminal Monitor or in embedded OpenSQL programs. OpenSQL statement syntax and results are consistent across supported host programming languages. This guide does not include specific information about host languages. For details, refer to the companion guide for your specific host language.

EDBC Products

EDBC products are interfaces between applications and database management systems. The EDBC products provide a variety of services, including:

- Translating between OpenSQL and host query interfaces, such as CA-IDMS, CA-Datcom/DB, or Oracle (for Windows NT, UNIX, or VMS).
- Emulating SQL functions for non-relational databases such as VSAM and CICS/VSAM.

- Converting between OpenSQL data types and data types that are native to other host database management systems.
- Translating host DBMS error messages to generic errors.

EDBC products are *transparent*, meaning that host databases are presented to the client as a consistent interface regardless of the underlying DBMS structure.

Embedded OpenSQL

Using embedded OpenSQL, OpenSQL statements can be mixed with host language statements. Use host language variables to specify values required by embedded OpenSQL statements. For information about the requirements of a specific host language, refer to your host language embedded SQL companion guide.

Building Embedded OpenSQL Programs

The Embedded SQL preprocessor converts embedded OpenSQL statements in your program into host language source code statements. Non-SQL host language statements are passed through the preprocessor without being altered. After the program has been preprocessed, it must be compiled and linked as appropriate for the host language. Refer to your host language embedded SQL companion guide for the details on preprocessing an embedded OpenSQL program.

Retrieving Status Information

Status information is available to an embedded program from the SQL Communications Area (SQLCA). The SQLCA is a data structure that can be included in the program. The SQLCA contains information concerning the results of the last executed OpenSQL statement. Statements in embedded OpenSQL programs can refer to data in the SQLCA for execution of conditional actions. The language-specific data structure of the SQLCA is described in your host language embedded SQL companion guide.

Specifying Parameters at Run Time

OpenSQL enables you to execute queries that are formulated at run-time (rather than before preprocessing). This is known as *dynamic OpenSQL*. For further information about dynamic OpenSQL, refer to the “Dynamic OpenSQL” chapter.

Differences between Embedded and Interactive OpenSQL

Embedded OpenSQL builds on the features and statements available in interactive OpenSQL. However, embedded OpenSQL differs from interactive OpenSQL in the following areas:

- Host language variables - Embedded OpenSQL allows host variables to be used in place of many syntactic elements. (There are no variables in interactive OpenSQL.)
- Error and status information - In interactive OpenSQL, error and status messages are sent directly to the terminal screen. In embedded OpenSQL, the SQL Communications Area (SQLCA) structure receives error and status information.
- Data manipulation statements - There are two embedded versions of the select statement. The first version is similar to the interactive select statement. The second version allows the retrieval and updating of an indeterminate number of rows, using cursors. The update and delete statements also have cursor versions. For more information about cursors, refer to Data Manipulation with Cursors in the “Embedded OpenSQL” chapter.
- Dynamic OpenSQL statements - Embedded OpenSQL creates statements dynamically from individual components specified in program variables. These statements can be executed repeatedly with different values.
- Additional database access statements - Embedded OpenSQL includes several statements not required in interactive OpenSQL. These additional statements enable your embedded application to connect to a database and to control cursors.
- Repeated queries - A repeated query executes more quickly than other queries, because the server retains the query execution plan. Embedded OpenSQL allows you to specify a select, insert, update, or delete statement as repeated.

Features

The availability of some OpenSQL features depend on the version of OpenSQL supported by the host DBMS to which your application connects. To determine which version of OpenSQL the host DBMS supports, select the row containing the OPEN/SQL_LEVEL capability from the iidbcapabilities system catalog. For details about system catalogs, refer to the “OpenSQL Standard Catalogs” chapter.

The following OpenSQL features are only available when the OPEN/SQL_LEVEL value in the iidbcapabilities system catalog is 00605 or higher:

- Create schema statement
- Grant and revoke statements
- Create table statement: column constraints and defaults
- Schema.table syntax
- Delimited identifiers
- The escape clause in the like predicate
- Database procedures

Object Names

The rules for naming OpenSQL objects (such as tables, columns, and views) are as follows:

- All keywords are reserved and cannot be used as variable or object names in OpenSQL. In addition, embedded OpenSQL reserves all words beginning with “ii”. Enforcement of keywords may vary by EDBC product. For a list of keywords, refer to the “Keywords” appendix.
- Names can contain only alphanumeric characters and must begin with an alphabetic character (A-Z).
- Names can contain (though not begin with) the special characters 0 through 9 and underscore (_).
- All names are converted as necessary to the proper case for the host DBMS. The host DBMS stores names in the system catalogs in one of three formats: uppercase, lowercase, or mixed case. For more information, refer to the iidbcapabilities catalog description in the “OpenSQL Standard Catalogs” chapter.
- The maximum length of an OpenSQL object name is 32 characters. To insure application portability, limit names to a maximum of 18 characters. Examples of objects managed by the user interfaces are:
 - Forms
 - JoinDefs
 - QBNames
 - Graphs
 - Reports

Regular and Delimited Identifiers

Identifiers in OpenSQL statements specify names for the following objects:

- User
- Column
- Correlation name
- Cursor
- Database procedure
- Database procedure parameter
- Index
- Prepared query
- Schema
- Table
- View

Specify these names using *regular* (unquoted) identifiers or *delimited* (double-quoted) identifiers. For example:

- Table name in a select statement specified using a regular identifier:


```
select * from employees
```
- Table name in a select statement specified using a delimited identifier:


```
select * from "my table"
```

Delimited identifiers allow special characters to be embedded in object names. OpenSQL restricts the use of special characters in regular identifiers.

Restrictions on Identifiers

For ANSI/ISO Entry SQL-92 standards compliance, identifiers should be no longer than 18 characters. The following table lists restrictions for each type of identifier:

Restriction	Regular Identifiers	Delimited Identifiers
Quotes	Specified without quotes	Specified in double quotes
Keywords	Cannot be a keyword	Can be a keyword
Case	Depends on host DBMS	Is significant

Restriction	Regular Identifiers	Delimited Identifiers
Valid Special Characters	“At” sign (@)	Ampersand (&)
	Crosshatch (#)	Asterisk (*)
	Dollar sign(\$)	“At” sign (@)
	Underscore (_)	Colon (;)
		Comma (,)
		Crosshatch (#)
		Dollar sign (\$)
		Double quotes (")
		Equal sign (=)
		Forward slash (/)
		Left and right caret (< >)
		Left and right parentheses
		Minus sign (-)
		Percent sign (%)
	Period (.)	
	Plus sign (+)	
	Question mark (?)	
	Semicolon (;)	
	Single quote (')	
	Space	
	Underscore (_)	
	Vertical bar ()	

The following characters cannot be embedded in object names using either regular or delimited identifiers:

- Backslash (\)
- Caret (^)
- Curly braces { }
- DEL (ASCII 127 or X'7F')
- Exclamation point (!)
- Left quote (ASCII 96 or X'60')
- Tilde (~)

To specify double quotes in a delimited identifier, the quotes must be repeated.
For example:

```
""Identifier""Name""
```

is interpreted by OpenSQL as:

```
"Identifier"Name"
```

Case Sensitivity of Identifiers

Case sensitivity for regular and delimited identifiers depends on the underlying DBMS. For compliance with ANSI/ISO Entry SQL-92 standards, delimited identifiers must be case sensitive.

OpenSQL treats database and user names without regard to case.

Comment Delimiters

To indicate comments in interactive OpenSQL, use the following delimiters:

- `/* and */` (left and right delimiters, respectively). For example:

```
/* This is a comment */
```

When using `/*...*/` to delimit a comment, the comment can continue over more than one line. For example,

```
/* Everything from here...  
...to here is a comment */
```

- `--` (left side only). For example,

```
--This is a comment.
```

The `--` delimiter indicates that the rest of the line is a comment. A comment delimited by `--` cannot be continued to another line.

To indicate comments in embedded OpenSQL, use the following delimiters:

- `--`, with the same usage rules as interactive OpenSQL.
- Host language comment delimiters. Refer to your host language companion guide for information about comment delimiters.

Statement Terminators

Statement terminators separate one OpenSQL statement from another. In interactive OpenSQL, the statement terminator is the semicolon (`;`). Statements must be terminated with a semicolon when entering two or more OpenSQL statements before issuing the go command (`\g`), selecting the Go menu item, or issuing some other Terminal Monitor command.

In the following example, the first and second statements are terminated by semicolons. The third statement need not be terminated with a semicolon, because it is the final statement.

```
select * from addr1st;  
select * from emp  
where fname = 'john';  
select * from emp  
where mgrname = 'dempsey'\g
```

If only one statement is entered, the statement terminator is not required. For example, the following single statement does not require a semicolon:

```
select * from addr1st\g
```

In embedded OpenSQL applications, the use of a statement terminator is determined by the rules of the host language. For details, refer to your host language companion guide.

Correlation Names

Correlation names are used in queries to clarify the table (or view) to which a column belongs. For example, the following query uses correlation names to join a table with itself:

```
select a.empname from emp a, emp b  
       where a.mgrname = b.empname  
       and a.salary > b.salary;
```

Correlation names can also be used to abbreviate long table names.

Specify correlation names in select statements. A single query can reference a maximum of 30 correlation and table names (including all base tables referenced by views specified in a query).

If a correlation name is not specified, the table name implicitly becomes the correlation name. For example, in the following query:

```
select * from employee  
       where salary > 100000;
```

OpenSQL assumes the correlation name, *employee*, for the salary column and interprets the preceding query as:

```
select * from employee  
       where employee.salary > 100000;
```

If a correlation name is specified for a table, the correlation name (and not the actual table name) must be used within the query. For example, the following query generates a syntax error:

```
/*incorrect*/  
select * from employee e  
       where employee.salary > 35000;
```

A correlation name must be unique. For example, the following statement is illegal because the same correlation name is specified for different tables:

```
/*incorrect*/
select e.ename from employee e, manager e
  where e.dept = e.dept;
```

A correlation name that is the same as a table that you own cannot be specified. If you own a table called mytable, the following query is illegal:

```
select * from othertable mytable...;
```

In nested queries, OpenSQL resolves unqualified column names by checking the tables specified in the nearest from clause, then the from clause at the next higher level, and so on, until all table references are resolved.

For example, in the following query, the dno column belongs to the deptsal table, and the dept column to the employee table:

```
select ename from employee
  where salary >
        (select avg(salary) from deptsal
         where dno = dept);
```

Because the columns are specified without correlation names, OpenSQL performs the following steps to determine to which table the columns belong:

Column	Action
dno	1. OpenSQL checks the table specified in the nearest from clause (the deptsal table). The dno column does belong to the deptsal table. OpenSQL interprets the column specification as deptsal.dno.
dept	2. OpenSQL checks the table specified in the nearest from clause (deptsal). The dept column does not belong to the deptsal table. 3. OpenSQL checks the table specified in the from clause at the next higher level (the employee table). The dept column does belong to the employee table. OpenSQL interprets the column specification as employee.dept.

OpenSQL does not search across subqueries at the same level to resolve unqualified column names. For example, given the query:

```
select * from employee
  where
    dept = (select dept from sales_departments
           where mgrno=manager)
    or
    dept = (select dept from mktg_departments
           where mgrno=manager_id);
```

OpenSQL checks the description of the sales_departments table for the mgrno and manager columns. If they are not found, OpenSQL checks the employee table next, but will not check the mktg_departments table. Similarly, OpenSQL first checks the mktg_departments table for the mgrno and manager_id columns. If they are not found, OpenSQL will check the employee table, but will never check the sales_departments table.

OpenSQL Limits

To maintain application portability, your OpenSQL application should observe the limits listed in the following table. An individual host DBMS may permit values in excess of those listed here.

Item	Min/Max	Limit
Char length	Max	240 characters
Columns in index	Max	16 columns
Columns in order by clause	Max	16 columns
Columns in table	Max	127 columns
Columns in view	Max	127 columns
Columns: total length in group by clause	Max	2000 bytes
Columns: total length in order by clause	Max	2000 bytes
Elements in select list	Max	127 elements
Negative float value	Min	Processor-dependent
Negative float value	Max	Processor-dependent
Positive float value	Min	Processor-dependent
Positive float value	Max	Processor-dependent
Host variables in OpenSQL statement	Max	256 variables
Integer value	Min	-2,147,483,648
Integer value	Max	+2,147,483,647
Predicates in having clause	Max	50 predicates
Predicates in where clause	Max	50 predicates
Row length (including overhead)	Max	2000 bytes
Scalar functions in select list	Max	127 functions
Smallint value	Min	-32,768

Item	Min/Max	Limit
Smallint value	Max	32,767
SQL identifier	Max	18 characters
Tables in SQL statement	Max	15 tables
User ID	Max	18 characters
Varchar length	Max	2000 characters

OpenSQL Data Types

This chapter describes the character, numeric, and abstract OpenSQL data types, along with data type storage formats, literals, and OpenSQL constants.

The following table lists the OpenSQL data types:

Class	Category	Data Type (Synonyms)
Character	Fixed length	character (char)
	Varying length	varchar
Numeric	Exact numeric	integer (integer4, int)
		smallint (integer2)
		decimal (dec, numeric)
	Approximate numeric	float (float8, double precision)
		real (float4)
Abstract	(none)	date

Character Data Types

Character data types are strings of ASCII characters. Upper and lower case alphabetic characters are accepted literally. OpenSQL supports one fixed-length character data type, character, and one variable-length character data types, varchar.

The maximum row length in an OpenSQL table is 2008 bytes. Therefore, the maximum length of a character column is 2008 minus any additional space requirements. Additional space requirements for character columns are as follows:

- Varchar columns require two additional bytes to store a length specifier.
- Nullable columns require one additional byte to store a null indicator.

The Character Data Type

Character strings are fixed-length strings that can contain any printing or non-printing character, and the null character ('\0'). For example, if you enter ABC into a character(5) column, five bytes will be stored, as follows:

```
'ABC '
```

Leading and embedded blanks are significant when comparing character strings. For example, OpenSQL considers the following character strings to be different:

```
'A B C '  
'ABC'
```

When selecting character strings using the underscore (_) wildcard character, any trailing blanks you want to match must be included. For example, to select the following character string:

```
'ABC '
```

the wildcard specification must also contain trailing blanks:

```
'_ _ '
```

Length is not significant when comparing character strings. The shorter string is (logically) padded to the length of the longer. For example, OpenSQL considers the following character strings equal:

```
'ABC '  
'ABC '
```

Char is a synonym for character.

The Varchar Data Type

Varchar strings are variable-length strings, returned to applications as a 2-byte length specifier followed by character data. The varchar data type can contain any character, including non-printing characters and the ASCII null character ('\0').

Blanks are significant in the varchar data type. For example, OpenSQL does not consider the following two varchar strings equal:

```
'the store is closed'
```

and

```
'thestoreisclosed'
```

If the strings being compared are unequal in length, the shorter string is padded with trailing blanks until it equals the length of the longer string.

For example, the following two varchar strings:

'abcde' and 'abcd'

are compared as

'abcde' and 'abcd '

Numeric Data Types

OpenSQL has two categories of numeric data types: *exact* and *approximate*. The exact numeric data types are the integer data types and the decimal data type. The approximate numeric data types are the floating point data types.

Integer Data Types

There are two integer data types:

- smallint (two-byte)
- integer (four-byte)

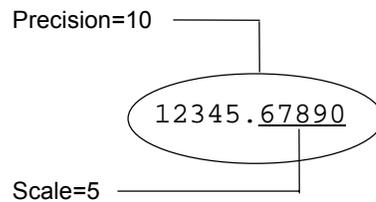
Note: Integer2 is a synonym for smallint and integer4 is a synonym for integer.

The following table lists the ranges of values for each integer data type:

Integer Data Type	Lowest Possible Value	Highest Possible Value
integer (integer4)	-2,147,483,648	+2,147,483,647
smallint (integer2)	-32,768	+32,767

The Decimal Data Type

The decimal data type is an exact numeric data type defined in terms of its *precision* (total number of digits) and *scale* (number of digits to the right of the decimal point). The following figure illustrates precision and scale in decimal values:



The minimum precision for a decimal value is 1 and the maximum is 31. The scale of a decimal value cannot exceed its precision. Scale can be 0 (no digits to the right of the decimal point).

Specify the declaration using the following syntax:

decimal(*p,s*)

where

p=precision

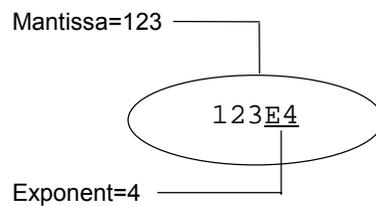
s=scale

Valid synonyms for the decimal data type are dec and numeric.

Note: The decimal data type is suitable for storing currency data. Note that, for display purposes, a currency sign cannot be specified for decimal values.

The Floating Point Data Types

A floating point value is represented either as whole plus fractional digits (like decimal values) or as a mantissa plus an exponent. The following figure illustrates the mantissa and exponent parts of floating point values:



There are two floating point data types:

- real (4-byte)
- float (8-byte)

Note: Float4 is a synonym for real, and float8 and double precision are synonyms for float.

Floating point numbers are double-precision quantities stored in four or eight bytes. The range of float values is processor-dependent, and the precision is approximately 16 significant digits.

Specify the precision (number of significant bits) for a floating point value using the following (optional) syntax:

float(*n*)

where *n* is a value from 0 to 53.

OpenSQL allocates storage according to the precision you specify, depending on the host DBMS and hardware. For information about the correct notation for a floating point numeric literal, refer to Numeric Literals in this chapter.

Abstract Data Type

The abstract data type includes the date data type, which is described below.

The Date Data Type

OpenSQL supports date data types for sessions connected to:

- Any EDBC product to a host DBMS (such as DB2) that supports date data types.
- The relational DBMS supplied with the IMS and VSAM EDBC products.

If the host DBMS supports date data types, the `iidbcapabilities` standard catalog table includes a row where `cap_capability` is set to `OPEN_SQL_DATES` and `cap_value` is set to `LEVEL 1`. For details about EDBC product catalogs, refer to the “OpenSQL Standard Catalogs” chapter.

Tables created in OpenSQL with date columns are mapped to the date format of the host DBMS. For example, OpenSQL date could map to a DB2 date, time, or timestamp data type.

On input, date constants in queries must be specified using the OpenSQL `date()` function.

OpenSQL supports the following operations on date data:

- Ordering on date columns
- Comparing two date columns
- Comparing a date column to a date constant

Absolute Date Input Formats

Dates are specified as quoted character strings. A date can be entered by itself or together with a time value. For more information about date and time display, refer to Date and Time Display Formats in this chapter.

The legal formats for absolute date values are determined by the `II_DATE_FORMAT` setting, summarized in the following table. If `II_DATE_FORMAT` is not set, the US formats are the default input formats. `II_DATE_FORMAT` can be set on a session basis.

II_DATE_FORMAT Setting	Valid Input Formats	Output
US (default format)	<i>mm/dd/yyyy</i> <i>dd-mmm-yyyy</i> <i>mm-dd-yyyy</i> <i>yyyy.mm.dd</i> <i>yyyy_mm_dd</i> <i>mmddy</i> <i>mm-dd</i> <i>mm/dd</i>	<i>dd-mmm-yyyy</i>
MULTINATIONAL	<i>dd/mm/yy</i> and all US formats except <i>mm/dd/yyyy</i>	<i>dd/mm/yy</i>
ISO	<i>yymmdd</i> <i>yymmdd</i> <i>yyyymmdd</i> <i>mmdd</i> <i>mdd</i> and all US input formats except <i>mmddy</i>	<i>yymmdd</i>
SWEDEN/FINLAND	<i>yyyy-mm-dd</i> all US input formats except <i>mm-dd-yyyy</i>	<i>yyyy-mm-dd</i>

II_DATE_FORMAT Setting	Valid Input Formats	Output
GERMAN	<i>dd.mm.yyyy</i> <i>ddmmyy</i> <i>dmmyy</i> <i>dmmyyyy</i> <i>ddmmyyyy</i> and all US input formats except <i>yyyy.mm.dd</i> and <i>mmdyy</i>	<i>dd.mm.yyyy</i>
YMD	<i>mm/dd</i> <i>yyyy-mm-dd</i> <i>mmd</i> <i>yyddd</i> <i>yyddd</i> <i>yyyyddd</i> <i>yyyyddd</i> <i>yyyy-dd</i>	<i>yyyy-mmm-dd</i>
DMY	<i>dd/mm</i> <i>dd-mm-yyyy</i> <i>ddmm</i> <i>ddmmy</i> <i>ddmmyy</i> <i>ddmmyyy</i> <i>ddmmyyyy</i> <i>dd-mmm-yyyy</i>	<i>dd-mmm-yyyy</i>
MDY	<i>mm/dd</i> <i>dd-mm-yyyy</i> <i>mmd</i> <i>mddy</i> <i>mmdyy</i> <i>mddyyy</i> <i>mmdyyyy</i> <i>mmm-dd-yyyy</i>	<i>mmm-dd-yyyy</i>

Year defaults to the current year. In formats that include delimiters (such as forward slashes or dashes), specify the last two digits of the year. The first two digits default to the current century (1900). For example, if you enter the following date:

```
'03/21/98'
```

using the format *mm/dd/yyyy*, OpenSQL assumes that you are referring to March 21, 1998.

In three-character month formats, for example, *dd-mmm-yy*, OpenSQL requires three-letter abbreviations (for example, *mar*, *apr*, *may*).

To specify the current system date, use the constant `today`. For example:

```
select date('today');
```

To specify the current system time, use the constant `now`.

Absolute Time Input Formats

The legal format for inputting an absolute time is

```
'hh:mm[:ss] [am | pm] [timezone]'
```

Input formats for absolute times are assumed to be on a 24-hour clock. If a time is entered with an am or pm designation, then OpenSQL automatically converts the time to a 24-hour internal representation.

If *timezone* is omitted, OpenSQL assumes the local time zone designation. Times are displayed using the time zone adjustment specified by `II_TIMEZONE_NAME`. For details about time zone settings and valid time zones, refer to your installation guide.

If an absolute time is entered without a date, OpenSQL assumes the current system date.

Combined Date and Time Input

Any valid absolute date input format can be paired with a valid absolute time input format to form a valid date and time entry. The following table shows some examples of valid date and time entries using the US absolute date input formats:

Format	Example
<i>mm/dd/yy hh:mm:ss</i>	11/15/98 10:30:00
<i>dd-mmm-yy hh:mm:ss</i>	15-nov-98 10:30:00
<i>mm/dd/yy hh:mm:ss</i>	11/15/98 10:30:00
<i>dd-mmm-yy hh:mm:ss gm</i> t	15-nov-98 10:30:00 gm
<i>dd-mmm-yy hh:mm:ss</i> [am pm]	15-nov-98 10:30:00 am
<i>mm/dd/yy hh:mm</i>	11/15/98 10:30
<i>dd-mmm-yy hh:mm</i>	15-nov-98 10:30
<i>mm/dd/yy hh:mm</i>	11/15/98 10:30
<i>dd-mmm-yy hh:mm</i>	15-nov-98 10:30

Date and Time Display Formats

OpenSQL outputs date values as strings of 25 characters with trailing blanks inserted.

To specify the output format of an absolute date and time, `IL_DATE_FORMAT` must be set. For a list of `IL_DATE_FORMAT` settings and associated formats, refer to Absolute Date Input Formats in this chapter. The display format for absolute time is:

hh:mm:ss

OpenSQL displays 24-hour times for the current time zone, which is determined when OpenSQL is installed. Dates are stored in Greenwich Mean Time (GMT) and adjusted for your time zone when they are displayed.

If seconds are omitted when entering a time, OpenSQL displays zeros in the seconds' place.

Storage Formats of Data Types

The following table lists storage formats for OpenSQL data type:

Notation	Type	Range
character(1) - character(2000)	character	A string of 1 to 2000 characters.
varchar(1) - varchar(2000)	character	A string of 1 to 2000 characters.
smallint	2-byte integer	-32,768 to +32,767.
integer	4-byte integer	-2,147,483,648 to +2,147,483,647.
decimal(<i>p</i> , <i>s</i>)	fixed-point exact numeric	Depends on precision and scale; default is (5,0); -99999 to +99999. Maximum number of digits is 31.
real	4-byte floating	-1.0e+38 to +1.0e+38 (7 digit precision).
float	8-byte floating	-1.0e+38 to +1.0e+38 (16 digit precision).
date	date (12 bytes)	1-jan-0001 to 30-dec-9999.

Note: If your hardware supports the IEEE standard for floating point numbers, then the float type is accurate to 14 decimal precision (`$.ddddddddddd.dd` to `$.ddddddddddd.dd`) and ranges from `-10**308` to `+10**308`.

Literals

A literal is an explicit representation of a value. OpenSQL supports two types of literals:

- String
- Numeric

String Literals

String literals are specified by one or more characters enclosed in single quotes. The default data type for string literals is `varchar`, but a string literal can be assigned to any character data type or to the date data type without using a data type conversion function.

Quotes within Strings

To include a single quote inside a string literal, it must be doubled. For example:

```
'The following letter is quoted: ''A''.'
```

which evaluates to

```
The following letter is quoted: 'A'.
```

Numeric Literals

Numeric literals specify numeric values. There are three types of numeric literals:

- Integer
- Decimal
- Floating point

A numeric literal can be assigned to any of the numeric data types without using an explicit conversion function. OpenSQL automatically converts the literal to the appropriate data type, if necessary.

By default, OpenSQL uses the period (.) to indicate the decimal when needed. This default can be changed by setting `II_DECIMAL`.

Note: If `II_DECIMAL` is set to comma, be sure that when OpenSQL syntax requires a comma (such as a list of table columns or OpenSQL functions with several parameters), that the comma is followed by a space. For example:

```
select col1, ifnull(col2, 0), left(col4, 22) from t1;
```

Integer Literals

Integer literals are specified by a sequence of up to 10 digits and an optional sign, in the following format:

```
[+|-] digit {digit} [e digit]
```

Integer literals are represented internally as either an integer or a smallint, depending on the value of the literal. If the literal is within the range -32,768 to +32,767, it is represented as a smallint. If its value is within the range -2,147,483,648 to +2,147,483,647 but outside the range of a smallint, then it is represented as an integer. Values that exceed the range of integers are represented as decimals.

Integers can be specified using a simplified scientific notation, similar to the way floating point values are specified. To specify an exponent, follow the integer value with the letter “e” and the value of the exponent. This notation is useful for specifying large values. For example, to specify 100,000 use exponential notation as follows:

```
1e5
```

Decimal Literals

Decimal literals are specified as signed or unsigned numbers of 1 to 31 digits that include a decimal point. The *precision* of a decimal number is the total number of digits, including leading and trailing zeros. The *scale* of a decimal literal is the total number of digits to the right of the decimal point, including trailing zeros. Decimal literals that exceed 31 digits are treated as floating point values.

Examples of decimal literals are:

```
3.  
-10.  
1234567890.12345  
001.100
```

Floating Point Literals

A floating point literal must be specified using scientific notation. The format is:

```
[+|-] {digit} [.{digit}] e | E [+|-] {digit}
```

For example:

```
2.3e-02
```

At least one digit must be specified, either before or after the decimal point.

OpenSQL Constants

OpenSQL provides the following constants:

Special Constant	Meaning
now	Current date and time. Specify this constant in quotes. Valid only for EDBC products that support the date data type.
null	Indicates a missing or unknown value in a table.
today	Current date. Specify this constant in quotes. Valid only for EDBC products that support the date data type.
user	Effective user for the current session (the host DBMS user identifier, not the operating system user identifier).

These constants can be used in queries and expressions. For example:

```
select date('now');
insert into sales_order
(item_number, clerk, billing_date)
values ('123', user, date('today')+date('7 days'));
```

Nulls

A null represents an undefined or unknown value and is specified by the keyword *null*. A null is not the same as a zero, a blank, or an empty string. A null can be assigned to any nullable column when no other value is specifically assigned. More information about defining nullable columns is provided in the Create Table section in the “OpenSQL Statements” chapter.

The is null predicate allows nulls to be handled in queries. For details, refer to The Exists Predicate in the “OpenSQL Statements” chapter.

Nulls and Comparisons

Because a null is not a value, it cannot be compared to any other value (including another null value). For example, the following where clause evaluates to false if one or both of the columns is null:

```
where columna = columnb
```

Similarly, the where clause

```
where columna < 10 or columna >= 10
```

is true for all numeric values of columna, but false if columna is null. The one exception, count(), is described in the following Nulls and Aggregate Functions section.

Nulls and Aggregate Functions

When executing an aggregate function against a column that contains nulls, the function ignores the nulls. This prevents unknown or inapplicable values from affecting the result of the aggregate.

For example, if you apply the aggregate function, avg(), to a column that holds the ages of your employees, you want to be sure that any ages that have not been entered in the table are not treated as zeros by the function. This would distort the true average age. If a null is assigned to any missing ages, then the aggregate returns a correct result: the average of all known employee ages.

Aggregate functions, except count(), return null for an aggregate over an empty set, even when the aggregate includes columns that are not nullable (in this case, count() returns 0). In the following example, the select returns null, since there are no rows in test:

```
create table test (col1 integer not null);
select max(col1) as x from test;
```

When specifying a column that contains nulls as a grouping column (that is, in the group by clause) for an aggregate function, OpenSQL considers all nulls in the column as equal for the purposes of grouping. This is the one exception to the rule that nulls are not equal to other nulls. For information about the group by clause, refer to The Group by Clause in the “OpenSQL Statements” chapter.

Elements of OpenSQL Statements

This chapter describes the following elements of OpenSQL statements:

- Functions, operators, and predicates
- Arithmetic operations, assignments, and other basic operations
- Expressions and search conditions in queries

This chapter identifies the differences in syntax between embedded and interactive OpenSQL. If the embedded syntax is dependent on the host language, you are referred to your host language companion guide.

Operators

OpenSQL supports three types of operators:

- Arithmetic
- Comparison
- Logical

Each of these is described in the following sections.

Arithmetic Operators

Arithmetic operators are used to combine numeric expressions arithmetically to form other numeric expressions. Valid OpenSQL arithmetic operators are (in descending order of precedence):

Arithmetic Operator	Description
+ and -	plus, minus (unary)
* and /	multiplication, division (binary)
+ and -	addition, subtraction (binary)

Unary operators group from right to left and binary operators group from left to right. The unary minus (-) can be used to reverse the algebraic sign of a value.

Use parentheses to force the desired order of precedence. For example:

```
(job.lowsal + 1000) * 12
```

is an expression in which the parentheses force the addition operator (+) to take precedence over the multiplication operator (*).

Comparison Operators

Comparison operators allow you to compare two expressions. OpenSQL includes the following comparison operators:

Operator	Description
=	equal to
<>	not equal to
>	greater than
>=	greater than or equal to
<	less than
<=	less than or equal to

All comparison operators are of equal precedence.

The equal sign (=) also serves as the assignment operator in assignment operations. For details, refer to Assignment Operations in this chapter.

Logical Operators

OpenSQL has three logical operators:

- Not (highest precedence)
- And (next precedence)
- Or (lowest precedence)

Parentheses can be used to change the precedence. For example, assume that the following appears in a query:

exprA or exprB and exprC

OpenSQL evaluates the above as if it were:

exprA or (exprB and exprC)

However, by using parentheses, the order in which OpenSQL evaluates the expressions can be changed. For example:

(exprA or exprB) and exprC

When parenthesized as shown, *(exprA or exprB)* is evaluated first, then the and operator is used for that result with *exprC*.

Operations

This section describes the following basic operations that can be performed:

- Assignments
- Arithmetic operations

Assignment Operations

An assignment operation is an operation that places a value in a column or variable. Assignment operations occur during the execution of insert, update, fetch, create table as...select, and embedded select statements.

When an assignment operation occurs, the data types of the assigned value and the receiving column or variable must be either the same or compatible. If the data types are compatible but not the same, OpenSQL performs a default type conversion.

The character and varchar data types are compatible with one another. A value from a string can be assigned to a date data item if the value in the string is formatted in a valid OpenSQL date input format. For information about valid input formats, refer to Absolute Date Input Formats in the “OpenSQL Data Types” chapter.

All numeric types are compatible with one another. For example, assuming that the following table is created:

```
create table emp
(name      character(20),
 salary   float not null,
 hiredate date not null);
```

then this insert statement:

```
insert into emp (name, salary, hiredate)
values ('John Smith', 40000, date('10/12/98'));
```

assigns the varchar string literal, 'John Smith', to the character name column, the integer literal 40000 to the float salary column, and the varchar string literal '10/12/98' to the date column, hiredate.

Other examples of assignments are:

```
update emp set name = 'Mary Smith'
where name = 'Mary Jones';
create table emp2 (name2, hiredate2) as
select name, hiredate from emp;
```

In the following embedded OpenSQL example, the value in the name column is assigned to the variable, name_var, for each row that fulfills the where clause:

```
exec sql select name into :name_var from emp
where empno = 125;
```

The following sections present some specific guidelines for assignments into each of the general data types, as well as null assignments. In addition, refer to your host language companion guide for information about which host language data types are compatible with which OpenSQL data types if you are assigning to a host language variable.

Character String Assignments

The character and varchar character types are compatible. Any character string can be assigned to any column or variable of character data type. (If an assignment results in truncation, OpenSQL returns a warning.) The result of the assignment depends on the types of the assignment string and the receiving column or variable:

- If a character string is assigned to a varchar column or variable, trailing blanks are trimmed from the character string before it is assigned.

If the length of the receiving string is shorter than the fixed length string, OpenSQL truncates the fixed length string (from the right end) and, if the assignment was to a variable, a warning condition is indicated. For a discussion of the SQLWARN indicators, refer to the SQL Communications Area (SQLCA) in the "OpenSQL Features" chapter.

- If a string is assigned to a column or variable that is shorter than the fixed-length string, OpenSQL truncates the fixed-length string from the right end. If a fixed-length string is assigned to a fixed-length column or variable that is longer than the fixed-length string, OpenSQL pads it with blanks. If the assignment is to a variable and the string is truncated, a warning is indicated in the SQLCA.

Numeric Assignments

Any numeric data type can be assigned to any other numeric data type. OpenSQL may truncate leading zeros, or all or part of the fractional part of a number if necessary. If it is necessary to truncate the non-fractional part of a value (other than leading zeros), an overflow error results. When a float or decimal value is assigned to an integer column or variable, the fractional part is truncated.

Date Assignments

Date values can be assigned to a date column. In addition, a string literal, a string host variable, or a string column value can be assigned to a date column if its value conforms to the valid OpenSQL input formats for dates.

When assigning character strings to date columns in OpenSQL, specify the string using the `date()` function. For example:

```
insert into transaction_log (employee, trxtime,  
    trxid) values (user, date('now'), 42);
```

When assigning a date value to a character string, OpenSQL converts the date to the standard OpenSQL output date format. For more information about date output formats, refer to Date and Time Display Formats in the “OpenSQL Data Types” chapter.

Null Assignments

A null can be assigned to a column of any data type if the column was defined as a nullable column. A null can also be assigned to a host language variable if there is an indicator variable associated with the host variable. For more information about indicator variables, refer to Indicator Variables in the “Embedded OpenSQL” chapter.

Arithmetic Operations

An arithmetic operation combines two or more expressions using the arithmetic operators to form a resulting numeric expression.

Before performing any arithmetic operation, OpenSQL converts the participating expressions to identical data types. The result is returned as the selected data type. The following sections describe this data type conversion.

Default Type Conversion

When two numeric expressions are combined, the EDBC product converts as necessary to make the data types of the expressions identical and assigns that same data type to the resulting expression. If it is necessary to convert the data type of an expression, the DBMS converts the expression having the data type of lower precedence to that of the higher.

The order of precedence among the numeric data types is, in highest-to-lowest order:

- Float
- Real
- Decimal
- Integer
- Smallint

For example, when OpenSQL operates on an integer and a floating point number, the integer is converted to a floating point number. If OpenSQL operates on two integers of different sizes, the smaller is converted to the size of the larger. All conversions are done before the operation is performed.

The following table summarizes the possible results of numeric combinations:

	smallint	integer	decimal	real	float
smallint	integer	integer	decimal	real	float
integer	integer	integer	decimal	real	float
decimal	decimal	decimal	decimal	real	float
real	real	real	real	real	float

For example, for this expression:

```
(job.lowsal + 1000) * 12
```

the first operator (+) combines a float expression (job.lowsal) with a smallint constant (1000). The result is float. The second operator (*) combines the float expression with a smallint constant (12), resulting in a float expression.

Arithmetic Operations on Decimal Data Types

In expressions that combine decimal values and return decimal results, the precision (total number of digits) and scale (number of digits to the right of the decimal point) of the result can be determined, as shown in the following table:

	Precision	Scale
Addition and subtraction	Larger number of fractional digits plus largest number of non-fractional digits + 1 (to a maximum of 31)	Scale of operand having the largest scale
Multiplication	Total of precisions to a maximum of 31	Total of scales to a maximum of 31
Division	31	(31 precision of first operand) + (scale of first operand) (scale of second operand)

For example, in the following decimal addition operation:

1.234 + 567.89

the scale and precision of the result is calculated as follows:

Precision = 7

Calculated as 3 (larger number of fractional digits) +
3 (larger number of non-fractional digits) + 1 = 7

Scale = 3

The first operand has the larger number of digits to the right of the decimal point

Result:

0569.124

Note: If the result of arithmetic using decimal data exceeds the declared precision or scale of the column to which it is assigned, OpenSQL truncates the result and does not issue an error.

Aggregate Functions

This section describes OpenSQL aggregate functions. An aggregate function returns a single value based on the contents of a column. Aggregate functions are also called “set” functions. The following example uses the sum aggregate function to calculate the total of salaries for employees in department 23:

```
select sum (employee.salary)
  from employee
 where employee.dept = 23;
```

The following table lists OpenSQL aggregate functions:

Name	Result Data Type	Description
count	integer	Count of occurrences.
sum	integer, float	Column total.
avg	float	Average (sum/count). The sum of the values must be within the range of the result data type.
max	same as argument	Maximum value.
min	same as argument	Minimum value.

Aggregate functions are specified using the following format:

function_name (**[distinct | all]** *expr*)

where *function_name* denotes an aggregate function and *expr* denotes any expression. The expression cannot include an aggregate function reference at any level of nesting.

The optional keyword `distinct` tells OpenSQL to eliminate duplicate values from the argument before performing the function. The optional keyword `all` directs OpenSQL to retain duplicate values. By default OpenSQL retains duplicates. (The `min` and `max` functions are not used in conjunction with `distinct`.)

Nulls are ignored by the aggregate functions, except for `count()`.

The Count Function and Nulls

The count function has the following unique characteristics:

- Count() accepts the wild card character, *, as an argument. When specifying count(*), OpenSQL returns the number of rows in a result table. For example, the statement:

```
select count(*)
  from employee
 where dept = 23;
```

counts the number of employees in department 23. The asterisk (*) argument cannot be qualified with all or distinct.

- Because count(*) counts rows rather than columns, count(*) does not ignore nulls. Consider the following table:

Name	Exemptions
Smith	0
Jones	2
Tanghetti	4
Fong	null

The following expression:

```
count(exemptions)
```

returns the value 3, (omitting nulls) whereas

```
count(*)
```

returns 4.

If the argument to an aggregate function (except count) evaluates to an empty set, the function returns a null. For empty sets, the count function returns a zero.

The Group by Clause with Aggregate Functions

The group by clause allows aggregate functions to be performed on subsets of the rows in the table. The subsets are defined by the group by clause. For example, the following query scans a table of candidates and returns the average level of funding for each political party:

```
select party, avg(funding)
  from candidates
 group by party;
```

Restrictions on the Use of Aggregate Functions

The following restrictions apply to the use of aggregate functions:

- Aggregate functions cannot be nested.
- Aggregate functions can only be used in a select or having clause.
- If a select or having clause contains an aggregate function, columns not specified in the aggregate must be specified in the group by clause. For example:

```
select dept, avg(emp_age)
       from employee
       group by dept;
```

The above select statement refers to two columns, dept and emp_age, but only emp_age is referenced by the aggregate function, avg. The dept column is specified in the group by clause

Aggregate Functions and Decimal Data

Given decimal arguments, aggregate functions (with the exception of count) return decimal results. The following table explains how to determine the scale and precision of results returned for aggregates with decimal arguments:

Name	Precision of Result	Scale of Result
count	Not applicable	Not applicable
sum	31	Same as argument
avg	31	Scale of argument + 1 (to a maximum of 31)
max	Same as argument	Same as argument
min	Same as argument	Same as argument

Expressions

Expressions are composed of various operators and operands that evaluate to either a single value or a set of values. Some expressions do not use operators. For example, a column name, is an expression. Constants are expressions also. Expressions are used in many contexts, such as specifying values to be retrieved (in a select clause) or compared (in a where clause). For example:

```
select empname, empage from employee
where salary <String `75000` >
```

In this example, empname and empage are expressions representing the column values to be retrieved, salary is an expression representing a column value to be compared, and 75000 is an integer literal expression.

An expression can be enclosed in parentheses, such as ('J. J. Jones'), without affecting its meaning.

Predicates

Predicates are keywords that specify a relationship between two expressions:

expression_1 predicate expression_2

OpenSQL supports the following types of predicates:

- [not] like
- [not] between
- [not] in
- all | any | some
- exists
- is [not] null

The second expression can be a subquery. If the subquery does not return any rows, then the comparison evaluates to false. For details about subqueries, refer to the Subqueries section in this chapter.

The Like Predicate

The like predicate performs pattern matching for the character data types (character and varchar). The like predicate has the following syntax:

expression [**not**] **like** *pattern* [**escape** *escape_character*]

The expression can be a column name or an expression involving string functions.

The *pattern* parameter must be a string literal. The pattern- matching (wild card) characters are the percent sign (%) to denote 0 or more arbitrary characters, and the underscore (_) to denote exactly one arbitrary character.

The like predicate does not handle trailing blanks. If matching a character data type or if the value has user-inserted trailing blanks, these trailing blanks must be included in your pattern. For example, if you are searching a character(10) column for any rows that have the name harold, use the following syntax for the like predicate:

```
name like 'harold    '
```

Four blanks are added to the pattern after the name in order to include the trailing blanks.

Because blanks are not significant when performing comparisons of c data types, the like predicate will return a correct result regardless of whether trailing blanks are included in the pattern.

If the escape clause is specified, the escape character suppresses any special meaning for the following character, allowing the character to be entered literally. The following characters can be escaped:

- The pattern matching characters % and _.
- The escape character itself. To enter the escape character literally, type it twice.
- Square brackets []. Within escaped square brackets ([and]), specify a series of individual characters or a range of characters separated by a dash (-).

The following examples illustrate some uses of the pattern matching capabilities of the like predicate:

To match any string starting with 'a':

```
name like 'a%'
```

To match any string starting with A through Z:

```
name like '[A-Z]%' escape '\'
```

To match any two characters followed by '25%':

```
name like '__25%' escape '\'
```

To match a string starting with a backslash:

```
name like '\\%'
```

Because there is no escape clause, the backslash is taken literally.

To match a string starting with a backslash and ending with a percent:

```
name like '\\%%' escape '\'
```

To match any string starting with 0 through 4, followed by an uppercase letter, then a [, any two characters and a final]:

```
name like '\[01234\]\[A-Z\][_ ]' escape '\'
```

To detect names starting with 'S' and ending with 'h', disregarding any leading or trailing spaces:

```
trim(name) like 'S%h'
```

To detect a single quote, the quote must be repeated:

```
name like ''''
```

The Between Predicate

The following table explains the operators between and not between:

Operator	Meaning
y between x and z	$x \leq y$ and $y \leq z$
y not between x and z	not (y between x and z)

x , y , and z are expressions and cannot be subqueries.

The In Predicate

The following table explains the operators, in and not in:

Operator	Meaning
y in (x , ..., z)	$y = x$ or ... or $y = z$ (x , ..., z) represents a list of expressions, each of which evaluates to a single value. None of the expressions (y , x , or z) can be subqueries. The in predicate returns true if y is equal to one of the values in the list represented by (x , ..., z).
y not in (x , ..., z)	not (y in (x , ..., z)) (x , ..., z) represents a list of expressions, each of which evaluates to a single value. The not in predicate returns true if y is not equal to any value in the list represented by (x , ..., z). None of the expressions (y , x , or z) can be subqueries.

Operator	Meaning
y in (<i>subquery</i>)	The subquery must be specified in parentheses and can refer to only one column in its select clause. The predicate returns true if y is equal to one of the values returned by the subquery.
y not in (<i>subquery</i>)	The subquery must be specified in parentheses and can refer to only one column in its select clause. The predicate returns true if y is not equal to any of the values returned by the subquery.

The Any-or-All Predicate

An any-or-all predicate takes the form

$\text{any-or-all-operator}(\text{subquery})$

The subquery must have exactly one element in the target list of its outermost subselect (so that it evaluates to a set of single values rather than a set of rows). The any-or-all operator must be one of the following:

=any	=all
<>any	<>all
<any	<all
<=any	<=all
>any	>all
>=any	>=all

Let \$ denote any one of the comparison operators =, <>, <, <=, >, >=. Then the predicate:

$x \text{\$any}(\text{subquery})$

evaluates to true if the comparison predicate:

$x \text{\$} y$

is true for at least one value y in the set of values represented by *subquery*. If the subquery is empty, the \$any comparison fails (evaluates to false). Likewise, the predicate:

$x \text{\$all}(\text{subquery})$

is true if the comparison predicate:

$$x \$ y$$

is true for all values y in the set of values represented by *subquery*. If the subquery is empty, the $\$$ all comparison evaluates to true.

The operator =any is equivalent to the operator in. For example:

```
select ename
from employee
where dept = any
  (select dno
   from dept
   where floor = 3);
```

can be rewritten as:

```
select ename
from employee
where dept in
  (select dno
   from dept
   where floor = 3);
```

The operator some is a synonym for operator any. For example:

```
select ename
from employee
where dept = some
  (select dno from dept where floor = 3);
```

The Exists Predicate

An exists predicate takes the form:

exists (*subquery*)

An exists predicate expression evaluates to true if the set represented by subquery is non-empty. For example:

```
select ename
from employee
where exists
  (select *
   from dept
   where dno = employee.dept
   and floor = 3);
```

It is typical, but not required, for the subquery argument to exists to be of the form select *.

The Is null Predicate

The is null predicate takes the form:

is [not] null

For example:

***x* is null**

is true if *x* is a null. Because you cannot test for null using the “=” comparison operator, the is null predicate must be used to determine whether an expression is null.

Search Conditions

Search conditions are used in where and having clauses to qualify the selection of data. Search conditions are composed of one or more predicates. Multiple predicates can be combined using parentheses and the logical operators (and, or, and not). The following examples illustrate possible combinations of search conditions:

Description	Example
Simple predicate	salary between 10000 and 20000
Predicate with not operator	edept not like 'eng_%'
Predicates combined using or operator	edept like 'eng_%' or edept like 'admin_%'
Predicates combined using and operator	salary between 10000 and 20000 and edept like 'eng_%'
Predicates combined using parentheses to specify evaluation	(salary between 10000 and 20000 and edept like 'eng_%') or edept like 'admin_%'

Predicates evaluate to true, false, or unknown. They evaluate to unknown if one or both operands are null (the is null predicate is the exception). When predicates are combined using logical operators (not, and, and or) to form a search condition, the search condition evaluates to true, false, or unknown as shown in the following tables:

and	true	false	unknown
true	true	false	unknown
false	false	false	false
unknown	unknown	false	unknown

or	true	false	unknown
true	true	true	true
false	true	false	unknown
unknown	true	unknown	unknown

Not(true) is false, not(false) is true, not(unknown) is unknown.

After all search conditions are evaluated, the value of the where or having clause is determined. The where or having clause can be true or false only. Unknown values are considered false. For more information about predicates and logical operators, refer to Predicates and Logical Operators in this chapter.

Subqueries

Subqueries are select statements nested within other select statements. For example:

```
select ename
from employee
where dept in
  (select dno
   from dept
   where floor = 3);
```

Use subqueries in a where clause to qualify a specified column against a set of rows. In the previous example, the subquery returns the department numbers for departments on the third floor. The outer query then retrieves the names of employees who work in those departments.

Subqueries often take the place of expressions in predicates. Subqueries can be used in place of expressions only in the specific instances outlined in the descriptions of predicates earlier in this chapter. The select clause of a subquery must contain only one element.

A subquery can refer to correlation names defined (explicitly or implicitly) outside the subquery. For example:

```
select ename
from employee empx
where salary
  > (select avg(salary)
     from employee empy
     where empy.dept = empx.dept);
```

The preceding subquery uses a correlation name (`empx`) defined in the outer query. The reference, `empx.dept`, must be explicitly qualified here, or it would be implicitly qualified by `empy`. The query is evaluated by assigning `empx` each of its values (that is, letting it range over the `employee` table), and evaluating the subquery for each value of `empx`. At least one of the correlation names must be specified in this example—either `empx` or `empy`, but not both, can be allowed to default to `employee`.

For more information about using correlation names in nested subqueries, refer to *Correlation Names* in the “*OpenSQL Data Types*” chapter.

Embedded OpenSQL

This chapter explains how to use host language variables and cursors in embedded OpenSQL, and describes the syntax of embedded OpenSQL statements and the typical structure of an embedded OpenSQL program.

The term *embedded OpenSQL* refers to OpenSQL statements embedded in a host language such as C or FORTRAN. Embedded OpenSQL statements include most interactive OpenSQL statements, plus a number of statements that serve the specific needs of an embedded program. (In addition, forms statements can be used to develop forms-based applications.)

Embedded OpenSQL programs must be processed by the embedded SQL preprocessor, which converts the statements into host language source code statements. The host language statements are primarily calls to a run-time library that provides the interface to the EDBC product or server. (Non-SQL host language statements are not processed by the preprocessor.)

After the program has been preprocessed, compile and link it according to the requirements of the host language. For details about compiling and linking an embedded OpenSQL program, refer to your host language companion guide.

The examples in this chapter use italics to indicate pseudocode, which specifies the program statements that must be provided in the host language. All of the examples use the semicolon (;) as the statement terminator. However, in an actual program, the statement terminator is determined by the host language.

Syntax of an Embedded OpenSQL Statement

The syntax of an embedded OpenSQL statement is as follows:

```
[margin] exec sql OpenSQL_statement [terminator]
```

When writing embedded OpenSQL statements, keep the following points in mind:

- The margin, consisting of spaces or tabs, is the margin that the host language compiler requires before the regular host code. Not all languages require margins. To determine if a margin is required, refer to your host language companion guide.
- The keywords, `exec sql`, must precede the OpenSQL statement itself. These words must appear together on a single line. They signal the preprocessor that the statement is an embedded OpenSQL statement. The preprocessor ignores statements that are not preceded by `exec sql`.
- The statement terminator depends on the requirements of the host language. Different host languages require different terminators. Some host languages, such as FORTRAN, do not require a statement terminator.
- Embedded OpenSQL statements can be continued across multiple lines, according to the host language's rules for line continuation.
- Labels can precede the embedded statement if a host language statement in the same place can be preceded by a label. The label must be at the correct margin for labels and no syntactic element (including comments) can appear between it and the `exec` keyword.
- Host language comments must follow the rules for the host language.
- Some host languages allow you to place a line number in the margin.

For information about language-dependent syntax, refer to your host language companion guide.

Structure of Embedded OpenSQL Programs

In general, OpenSQL statements can be embedded anywhere in a program that host language statements are allowed. The following example shows a simple embedded OpenSQL program that retrieves an employee's name and salary from the database and prints them on a standard output device. The statements that begin with the words, `exec sql`, are embedded OpenSQL statements.

```
begin program
exec sql include sqlca;

exec sql begin declare section;
  name  character_string(15);
  salary float;
exec sql end declare section;

exec sql whenever sqlerror stop;

exec sql connect 'personnel/db2';

exec sql select ename, sal
into :name, :salary
from employee
where eno = 23;

print name, salary;

exec sql disconnect;

end program
```

The sequence of statements in the above example illustrates the typical structure of embedded OpenSQL programs. The first OpenSQL statement to appear is:

```
exec sql include sqlca;
```

This statement incorporates the OpenSQL error and status handling mechanism—the SQL Communications Area (SQLCA)—into the program. The SQLCA is required by the whenever statement appearing later in the example.

Next is an OpenSQL declaration section. Host language variables to OpenSQL must be declared before using the variables in embedded OpenSQL statements.

The whenever statement that follows uses information from the SQLCA to control program execution under error or exception conditions. An error handling mechanism should precede all executable embedded OpenSQL statements in a program. For details about error handling, refer to the Error Handling topic in the “OpenSQL Features” chapter.

Following the whenever statement is a series of OpenSQL and host language statements.

The first statement:

```
exec sql connect 'personnel/db2';
```

initiates access to the DB2 personnel database through an ODBC product. Your application must connect to a database before attempting to access the database. The slash (/) separates the database name from the server class. (The default server class is INGRES.) For details about server class, refer to your Enterprise Access product guide.

After connecting to the personnel database, the application issues the select statement. The into clause specifies the host language variables into which the select statement retrieves values from the database. In the example, the variables are name and salary.

Following the select statement is a host language statement that prints the values contained in the variables. Host language and embedded OpenSQL statements can be mixed in an application.

Finally, the application program disconnects from the database.

Host Language Variables

Embedded OpenSQL allows host language variables to be used for many elements of embedded OpenSQL statements. Host language variables can be used to transfer data from the database into the program and vice versa. Host language variables can also replace the search condition in a where clause.

Host language variables can be used to specify:

- Database expressions - Variables can generally be used wherever expressions are allowed in embedded OpenSQL statements, such as in target lists and predicates. Variables must contain constant values and cannot represent names of database columns or include any operators.
- Search conditions - A where clause can be specified in a variable. The entire where clause must be contained in the variable. For example, to retrieve all columns for employees who earn more than the average salary:

```
wherevar = 'salary>(select avg(salary)
            from employee) '
exec sql select ename
into :name
from employee
where :wherevar
```

- Receiving variables - A host variable can be used to specify the objects of the into clause of the select and fetch statements. The into clause is the means by which values retrieved from the database are transferred to host language variables.
- Other statement arguments - The statement descriptions in this guide note which arguments can be specified using host language variables.

A host language variable can be a single variable or a structure.

All host language variables must be declared to embedded OpenSQL before you can use them in embedded OpenSQL statements. The names of these variables cannot be reserved keywords. For a list of keywords, refer to the “Keywords” appendix.

The following sections describe how to use host language variables. For language-specific details, refer to the host language companion guide.

Declaring Variables

Host language variables must be declared to OpenSQL before using them in any embedded OpenSQL statements. Host language variables are declared to OpenSQL in a *declaration section* that has the following syntax:

```
exec sql begin declare section;  
    host variable declarations  
exec sql end declare section;
```

A program can contain multiple declaration sections. The preprocessor treats variables that are declared in each declaration section as global to the embedded OpenSQL program from the point of declaration forward.

The variable declarations are identical to any variable declarations in the host language. The data types of the declared variables must belong to a subset of host language data types that are compatible with embedded OpenSQL data types. OpenSQL converts between host language data types and OpenSQL data types.

For a list of valid embedded OpenSQL data types and a discussion of data type conversion, refer to your host language companion guide.

The embedded OpenSQL preprocessor is concerned only with host language variables that are declared to OpenSQL. Host language variables that are not declared to OpenSQL are invisible to the preprocessor and therefore can include data types that the preprocessor does not understand.

The Include Statement

The embedded OpenSQL include statement lets you include external files in your source code. The syntax of the include file is as follows:

```
exec sql include filename;
```

This statement is commonly used to include an external file containing variable declarations. For example, assuming you have a file, *myvars.dec*, that contains a group of variable declarations, you can use the include statement in the following manner:

```
exec sql begin declare section;  
exec sql include 'myvars.dec';  
exec sql end declare section;
```

This is the functional equivalent of listing all the declarations in the myvars.dec file in the declaration section itself.

For details about the include statement, refer to the Include topic in the “OpenSQL Statements” chapter.

Variable Usage

After host language variables are declared, they can be used in embedded statements. Host language variables must be preceded by a colon. For example:

```
exec sql select ename, sal
into :name, :salary
from employee
where eno = :empnum;
```

The into clause contains two host language variables, name and salary and the where clause contains one, empnum.

A host variable can have the same name as a database object, such as a column. The preceding colon distinguishes the variable from a database object of the same name.

If the application issues a query intended to retrieve values from a table into a host variable and the query returns no value (for example, no row in the table fulfilled the query), the contents of the variable are not modified.

Variable Structures

To simplify the transfer of data between database tables and embedded programs, variable structures can be used in the select, fetch, and insert statements. Variable structures are specified, like single variables, according to the rules of the host language and must be declared in an embedded OpenSQL declare section. The number, data type, and ordering of the structure’s elements must correspond to the number, data type, and ordering of the result columns associated with a select, fetch, or insert statement.

For example, for a database table, employee, with the columns ename (data type character(20)) and eno (integer), declare the variable structure:

```
emprec
  ename character_string(20),
  eno integer;
```

and issue the select statement

```
exec sql select *
into :emprec.ename, :emprec.eno
from employee
where eno = 23;
```

Rather than specifying individual variables, you can specify the structure name in the select statement. To specify the preceding example using a structure name, use the following select statement:

```
exec sql select *
  into :emprec
  from employee
  where eno = 23;
```

The embedded OpenSQL preprocessor expands the structure name into the names of the individual members. Therefore, placing a structure name in the into clause is equivalent to enumerating all members of the structure in the order in which they were declared.

You can also use a structure to insert values in the database table. For example:

```
exec sql insert into employee (ename, eno)
  values (:emprec);
```

For details on the declaration and use of variable structures, refer to the host language companion guide.

The Dclgen Utility

Dclgen (Declaration Generator) is a structure-generating utility that maps the columns of a database table into a structure that can be included in a variable declaration. Invoke dclgen from the operating system level with the following command:

```
dclgen language dbname tablename filename structurename
```

where:

language is the host language (for example, "C").

dbname is the name of the database containing the table.

tablename is the name of the database table.

filename is the output file generated by dclgen containing the structure declaration.

structurename is the name of the generated host language structure.

Dclgen creates the declaration file, *filename*, containing a structure corresponding to the database table. The file also includes a declare table statement that identifies the database table and columns from which the structure was generated. After the file has been generated, an embedded OpenSQL include statement can be used to incorporate the file into the variable declaration section.

For details on the dclgen utility, refer to the host language companion guide.

Indicator Variables

An *indicator variable* is a two-byte integer variable associated with a host language variable in an embedded OpenSQL statement. Indicator variables enable the application to:

- Detect when a null has been retrieved into a host variable. (When used to detect or assign a null, indicator variables are referred to as null indicator variables.)
- Assign a null to a table column.
- Detect character string truncation (when retrieving from a table into a host variable).

Indicator variable must be declared to embedded OpenSQL in a declare section.

In an embedded OpenSQL statement, the indicator variable is specified immediately after the host variable, with a colon separating the two:

```
host_variable:indicator_variable
```

The optional keyword `indicator` can be used in the syntax:

```
host_variable indicator:indicator_variable
```

Indicator variables can be associated with host language variables that contain the value of a database column or a constant database expression. For example, the following statement associates null indicators with variables that contain values retrieved from table columns:

```
exec sql select ename, esal  
into :name:name_null, :salary:sal_null  
from employee;
```

Null Indicators and Data Retrieval

When OpenSQL retrieves a null for a host variable that has an associated indicator variable, it sets the indicator variable to -1 and does not change the value of the host variable. If the value retrieved is not a null, then the indicator variable is set to 0 and the value is assigned to the host variable.

If the value retrieved is null and the program does not supply a null indicator, an error results.

Null indicator variables can be associated with the following variables:

- select into result variables
- fetch into result variables

The following example illustrates the use of a null indicator when retrieving data from a database. This program retrieves employee information, then updates a roster. If a null phone number is detected (using the indicator, variable `phone_null`), the program places the string, N/A, in the roster's phone column.

```
exec sql fetch emp_cursor into :name,
      :phone:phone_null, :id;
if (phone_null = -1) then
  update_roster(name, 'N/A', id);
else
  update_roster(name, phone, id);
end if;
```

Using Null Indicators to Assign Nulls

An indicator variable can be used with a host variable to assign a null value to a table column. When OpenSQL performs the assignment, it checks the value of the host variable's associated indicator variable. If the indicator variable's value is -1, then OpenSQL assigns a null to the column and ignores the value of the host variable. If the indicator variable does not contain -1, OpenSQL assigns the value of the host variable to the column. If the indicator value is -1 and the column is not nullable, then OpenSQL returns an error.

The following example demonstrates the use of an indicator variable and the null constant with the insert statement:

```
read name, phone number, and id from terminal;
if (phone = ' ') then
  phone_null = -1;
else
  phone_null = 0;
end if;
exec sql insert into newemp (name, phone, id,
  comment) values (:name, :phone:phone_null,
  :id, null);
```

This second example retrieves data from a form and updates the data in the database:

```
exec frs getform empform (:name:name_null = name, :id:id_null = id);
exec sql update employee
set name = :name:name_null, id = :id:id_null
where current of emp_cursor;
```

Use null indicators to assign nulls in:

- The insert values list
- The update set list
- Constant expressions in select target lists used in embedded select statements or subselect clauses

All constant expressions in the above list can include the keyword `null`. Specifying the word `null` is equivalent to specifying a null indicator with the value -1.

Indicator Variables and Character Data Retrieval

If OpenSQL retrieves a character string into a host variable that is too small to hold the string, the data is truncated to fit. (If the data was retrieved from the database, OpenSQL sets the `sqlwarn1` field to "W".) If the host variable has an associated indicator variable, the indicator is set to the original length of the data. For example, the following statement sets the variable, `char_ind`, to 6 because it is attempting to retrieve a 6-character string into a 3-byte host variable, `char_3`:

```
exec sql select 'abcdef' into :char_3:char_ind;
```

Null Indicator Arrays and Host Structures

Use host structures to hold the data to be retrieved or written by `select`, `fetch`, and `insert` statements. In combination with host structures, an indicator array can be used to detect whether a particular member of the host structure contains a null.

An indicator array is an array of 2-byte integers that is associated with a host variable structure. Generally, indicator arrays are declared in the same `declare` section as their associated host variable structure. For example, the following code declares a host variable structure, `emprec`, and its associated indicator array, `empind`:

```
emprec  
  ename   character(20),  
  eid     integer,  
  esal    float;  
empind array(3) of short_integer;
```

The preceding structure and indicator array might be used as follows:

```
exec sql select name, id, sal  
into :emprec:empind  
from employee  
where number = 12;
```

A particular element of the indicator array is associated with the corresponding ordered member of the host structure: you do not need to specify each array element separately. The embedded OpenSQL preprocessor enumerates the elements in the array when expanding the structure into its members.

Data Manipulation with Cursors

Cursors enable embedded OpenSQL programs to process the result rows returned by a select statement, one at a time. After a cursor has been opened, it can be advanced through the result rows. When the cursor is positioned to a row, the data in the row can be transferred to host language variables and processed according to the requirements of the application. The row to which the cursor is positioned is referred to as the *current row*.

A typical cursor application uses OpenSQL statements to perform the following steps:

1. Declare a cursor that will select a set of rows for processing.
2. Open the cursor, thereby selecting the data.
3. Fetch each row from the result table and move the data from the row into host language variables.
4. Optionally update or delete the current row.
5. Close the cursor and terminate processing.

An Example of Cursor Processing

This simple example of cursor processing prints the names and salaries of all the employees in the employee table and updates the salary of employees earning less than \$10,000. For detailed information about the statements used in this example, refer to the “OpenSQL Statements” chapter.

```
exec sql include sqlca;

exec sql begin declare section;
name      character_string(15);
salary    float;
exec sql end declare section;

exec sql whenever sqlerror stop;

exec sql connect personnel/rdb;

exec sql declare c1 cursor for
select ename, sal
from employee
for update of sal;

exec sql open c1;

exec sql whenever not found goto closec1;

loop while more rows

/* The WHENEVER NOT FOUND statement causes the loop
** to be broken as soon as a row is not fetched.
*/

exec sql fetch c1 into :name, :salary;

print name, salary;

if salary < 10000 then
    exec sql update employee
```

```
        set salary = 10000
        where current of c1;

end if;
end loop;

closec1;

exec sql close c1;

exec sql disconnect;
```

Declaring a Cursor

Before a cursor can be used in an application, it must be declared. The syntax for declaring a cursor is:

```
exec sql declare cursor_name cursor for
    select_statement;
```

The declare cursor statement assigns a name to the cursor and associates the cursor with a select statement to use to retrieve data. A cursor is always associated with a particular select statement. The select is executed when the cursor is opened.

Updates can be performed only if the cursor's select statement does not include any of the following elements:

- Aggregates
- Union clause
- Group by clause
- Having clause
- Distinct

These elements can be present in subselects within the select statement, but must not occur in the outermost select statement.

The *cursor_name* can be specified using a string literal or a host language string variable. Cursor names can be assigned dynamically. For details, refer to An Example of Dynamically Specified Cursor Names in this chapter.

Opening Cursors

Opening a cursor executes the associated select statement and positions the cursor before the first row in the result table. To open a cursor, use the open statement:

```
exec sql open cursor_name [for readonly];
```

To specify that you intend to read the table without updating it, include the `for readonly` clause. This clause may improve the performance of the cursor retrieval. If `for readonly` is specified, updates cannot be performed on the data. `For readonly` can be specified even if the cursor was declared for update.

Open Cursors and Transaction Processing

OpenSQL treats a multi-query transaction as a single statement (logically). Cursors cannot remain open across transactions. The commit statement closes all open cursors, even if a close cursor statement was not issued.

If an error occurs while a cursor is open, the EDBC product or DBMS may roll back the entire transaction and close the cursor.

Fetching the Data

The fetch statement advances the position of the cursor through the result rows returned by the select. Using the fetch statement, your application can process the rows one at a time.

The syntax of the fetch statement is:

```
exec sql fetch cursor_name
      into variable {, variable};
```

The fetch statement advances the cursor to the first or next row in the result table and loads the values into host language variables.

To illustrate, the example of cursor processing shown previously contains the following declare cursor statement:

```
exec sql declare c1 cursor for
select ename, sal
from employee
for update of sal;

open c1;
```

Later in the program, the following fetch statement appears:

```
exec sql fetch c1 into :name, :salary;
```

This fetch statement puts the values from the `ename` and `sal` columns of the current row into the host language variables `name` and `salary`.

Since the fetch statement operates on a single row at a time, it is ordinarily placed inside a host language loop.

There are two ways to detect when the last row in the result table has been fetched:

- The `sqlcode` variable in the SQLCA is set to 100 if an attempt to fetch past the last row of the result table is made. (The SQLCA, or SQL Communications Area, is a group of variables used by OpenSQL to provide error and status information to applications. The SQLCA is described in detail in the “OpenSQL Features” chapter.) After the last row is retrieved, succeeding fetches do not affect the contents of the host language variables specified in the fetch statement’s `into` clause.
- The `whenever not found` statement specifies an action to be performed when the cursor moves past the last row. For details about the `whenever` statement, refer to Trapping Errors Using the `Whenever` Statement in the “OpenSQL Features” chapter.

Cursors can only move forward through a set of rows. To fetch a row again, a cursor must be closed and reopened.

Fetching Rows Inserted by Other Queries

While a cursor is open, the application can append rows using non-cursor insert statements. If rows are inserted after the current cursor position, the rows may or may not be visible to the cursor, depending on the following criteria:

- **Updatable cursors** - The newly inserted rows are visible to the cursor. Updatable cursors reference a single base table or updatable view.
- **Non-updatable cursors** - If the cursor select statement retrieves rows directly from the base table, the newly inserted rows are visible to the cursor. If the select statement manipulates the retrieved rows (for example, includes an `order by` clause), the cursor retrieves rows from an intermediate buffer, and cannot detect the newly inserted rows.

Using Cursors to Update Data

To use a cursor to update data, specify the `for update` clause in the cursor’s declaration:

```
exec sql declare cursor_name cursor for
    select_statement
    for update of column {, column};
```

The `for update` clause must list any columns in the selected database table that may require updating. Columns that have not been declared cannot be updated. If you are deleting rows, you do not need to declare the cursor for update.

The syntax for the close and fetch statements is no different for cursors opened for update. However, the update statement has an extended version for cursors:

```
exec sql update tablename
      set column = expression {, column = expression}
      where current of cursor_name;
```

The where clause of the cursor version specifies the row to which the cursor currently points, and the update affects only data in that row. Each column specified in the set clause must have been declared for updating in the declare cursor statement.

Be sure that the cursor is pointing to a row (a fetch has been executed) before performing a cursor update. The update statement does not advance the cursor. A fetch is still required to move the cursor forward one row. Two cursor updates not separated by a fetch will cause the same row to be updated twice or generate an error on the second update, depending on the underlying DBMS.

Using Cursors to Delete Data

The cursor version of the delete statement has the following syntax:

```
exec sql delete from tablename
      where current of cursor_name;
```

The delete statement deletes the current row. The cursor must be positioned on a row (as the result of a fetch statement) before a cursor delete can be performed. After the row is deleted, the cursor points to the position after the row (and before the next row) in the set. To advance the cursor to the next row, issue the fetch statement.

You do not have to declare a cursor for update to perform a cursor delete.

An Example of
Updating and
Deleting with Cursors

This example illustrates updating and deleting with a cursor:

```
exec sql include sqlca;

exec sql begin declare section;
name      character_string(15);
salary    float;
exec sql end declare section;

exec sql whenever sqlerror stop;

exec sql connect personnel/rdb;

exec sql declare c1 cursor for
select ename, sal
from employee
for update of sal;

exec sql open c1;

exec sql whenever not found goto closec1;
```

```
loop while more rows
exec sql fetch c1 into :name, :salary;
  print name, salary;

/* Increase salaries of all employees earning less
than 60,000. */

if salary < 60,000 then

print 'Updating ', name;
  exec sql update employee
    set sal = sal * 1.1
    where current of c1;

/* Fire all employees earning more than 300,000. */

else if salary > 300,000 then

print 'Terminating ', name;
  exec sql delete from employee
    where current of c1;

end if;

end loop;

closec1:

exec sql close c1;

exec sql disconnect;
```

Closing Cursors

The final action in cursor processing is to close the cursor. Once the cursor is closed, no more processing can be performed with it unless another open statement is issued. The syntax for closing the cursor is as follows:

```
exec sql close cursor_name;
```

The same cursor can be opened and closed any number of times in a single program, but it must be closed before reopening it. If a cursor is closed and reopened, the associated select statement is executed again, and the cursor is positioned before the start of the result rows.

Summary of Cursor Positioning

The following table summarizes the effects of cursor statements on cursor positioning:

Statement	Effect on Cursor Position
open	Cursor positioned before first row in set.
fetch	Cursor moves to next row in set. If it is already on the last row, the cursor moves beyond the set and its position becomes undefined.
update(<i>cursor</i>)	Cursor remains on current row.
delete(<i>cursor</i>)	Cursor moves to a position after the deleted row (but before the following row).
close	Cursor and set of rows become undefined.

For extended examples of the use of cursors in embedded OpenSQL, refer to your host language companion guide.

An Example of Dynamically Specified Cursor Names

A dynamically specified cursor name (a cursor name specified using a host string variable) can be used to scan a table that contains rows that are related hierarchically, such as a table of employees and managers. In a relational database, this structure must be represented as a relationship between two columns. In an employee table, typically employees are assigned an ID number. One of the columns in the employee table contains the ID number of each employee's manager. This column establishes the relationships between employees and managers.

To use dynamically specified cursor names to scan this kind of table:

- Write a routine that uses a cursor to retrieve all the employees that work for a manager.
- Create a loop that calls this routine for each row that is retrieved and dynamically specifies the name of the cursor to be used by the routine.

The following example retrieves rows from the employee table that has the following format:

```
exec sql declare employee table
(ename varchar(32),
 title varchar(20),
 manager varchar(20));
```

This program scans the employee table and prints out all employees and the employees that they manage:

```
/* This program will print out, starting with
** the top manager,
** each manager and who they manage for the entire
```

```
** company. */

exec sql include sqlca;

/* main program */
exec sql begin declare section;
    topmanager character string(21)
exec sql end declare section;

exec sql connect db2/db2;

exec sql whenever not found goto closedb;
exec sql whenever sqlerror call sqlprint;

/* Retrieve top manager */
exec sql select ename into :topmanager from employeewhere title = 'President';

print 'President', topmanager
call printorg(1, topmanager);
/* start with top manager */

/* closedb */
closedb:
exec sql disconnect;

/* This subroutine retrieves and displays employees
** who report to a given manager. This subroutine is
** called recursively to determine if a given
** employee is also a manager and if so,
** it will display who reports to them.
*/

subroutine printorg(level, manager)
level integer

exec sql begin declare section;
    manager character string(21)
    ename character string(33)
    title character string(21);
    cname character string(4);
exec sql end declare section;

/* set cursor name to 'c1', 'c2', ... */
cname = 'c' + level

exec sql declare :cname cursor for
select ename, title, manager from employee
    where manager = :manager
    order by ename;

exec sql whenever not found goto closec;

exec sql open :cname;

loop
    exec sql fetch :cname into :ename, :title,
        :manager;

/* Print employee's name and title */
print title, ename
/* Find out who (if anyone) reports to this employee*/
printorg(level+1, ename);

end loop

closec:
exec sql close :cname;
return;
```

Dynamic OpenSQL

This chapter discusses the functionality of dynamic programming including the SQL Descriptor Area (SQLDA) and dynamic OpenSQL statements, and describes how to execute a dynamic non-select statement and a dynamic select statement.

Dynamic programming enables embedded OpenSQL programs to specify a variety of program elements (such as queries and OpenSQL statements) at run time. In applications where table names or column names are not known until run time, or where complete queries must be built based on the application's run-time environment, the hard-coded OpenSQL statement is not sufficient. For example, an application might include an expert mode in which the run-time user can type in select queries and browse the results at the terminal. To support applications such as these, OpenSQL provides dynamic OpenSQL.

Dynamic OpenSQL provides the ability to specify table and column names and build queries at run time. Using dynamic OpenSQL, you can:

- Execute a statement that is stored in a buffer (execute immediate)
- Encode a statement stored in a buffer and execute it many times (prepare and execute)

Obtain information about a table at run time (prepare and describe)

For details about the execute immediate, prepare, execute, and describe statements, refer to Dynamic OpenSQL Statements in this chapter.

To support dynamic select statements, the cursor statements (for example, declare and open) have dynamic versions. For details, refer to Executing a Dynamic Select Statement and Using a Cursor to Retrieve the Results in this chapter.

The OpenSQL Descriptor Area (SQLDA) is an integral part of dynamic programming. The SQLDA is a host language structure used by dynamic OpenSQL as a storage space for information. When used with the describe statement, this information includes the name, data type, and length of the result columns, the form's fields, or the table field's columns. When the SQLDA is used with other dynamic forms statements, the information includes the data type, length, and addresses of the variables that either store values from the table or form or contain values to be placed in the table or form.

Depending on your host language, some of the statements discussed in this chapter may vary in syntax or may not be supported. Refer to your host language companion guide for information about dynamic programming that is specific to your host language.

The SQLDA

The descriptor area, called the SQLDA (SQL Descriptor Area), is a host language structure used by both dynamic OpenSQL and dynamic FRS (Forms Run-Time System). Dynamic OpenSQL uses the SQLDA to store information about each result column of the select statement. Dynamic FRS uses the SQLDA to hold descriptive information about the fields of a described form or columns of a described table field. Both dynamic OpenSQL and dynamic FRS use the SQLDA to store descriptive information about program variables. The SQLDA must be used when executing a describe statement (refer to the Describe Statement and the SQLDA topic in this chapter). The SQLDA can optionally be used when executing a fetch, open, prepare, execute, or execute immediate statement. (For details about these statements, refer to Dynamic OpenSQL Statements in this chapter.)

Structure of the SQLDA

Storage for the SQLDA structure is normally allocated at run time. If a program allows several dynamically defined cursors to be opened at one time, the program can allocate several SQLDA structures, one for each select statement, and assign each structure a different name.

Each host language has different considerations for the SQLDA structure. Refer to your host language companion guide on dynamic OpenSQL statements before writing a program that uses the SQLDA. The layout of the SQLDA is:

sqldabc	8-byte character array assigned the blank-padded value "SQLDA".
sqldabc	4-byte integer assigned the size of the SQLDA.
sqln	2-byte integer indicating the number of allocated sqlvar elements. This value must be set by the program before describing a statement. The value must be greater than or equal to zero.
sqld	2-byte integer indicating the number of result columns associated with the describe statement. This number specifies how many of the allocated sqlvar elements were used to describe the statement. If sqld is greater than sqln, then the program must reallocate the SQLDA to provide more storage buffers and reissue the describe statement.

To use the SQLDA to place values in a table or form, the program must set `sqld` to the proper number before the SQLDA is used in a statement.

When describing a dynamic OpenSQL statement, if the value in `sqld` is zero, the described statement is not a select statement.

<code>sqlvar</code>	An <code>sqln</code> -size array of:
<code>sqltype</code>	2-byte integer containing a code number indicating the data type of the column or variable. For a list of the codes and corresponding types, refer to Data Type Codes in this chapter.
<code>sqllen</code>	2-byte integer indicating the length of the column, variable, or field.
<code>sqldata</code>	Pointer to the variable described by the type and length.
<code>sqlind</code>	Pointer to indicator variable associated with the host variable.
<code>sqlname</code>	String containing the result column name (if a select statement is being described). Maximum length is 32 characters.

Including the SQLDA in a Program

To define the SQLDA, your application must issue the following include statement:

```
exec sql include sqlda;
```

Do not place this statement in a declaration section.

In most languages, this statement incorporates a set of type definitions that can be used to define the SQLDA structure. In some languages, it actually declares the structure. If the structure is declared directly (instead of using the include statement), you can specify any name for the structure. Refer to your host language companion guide for information about how your language handles this statement.

A program can have more than one SQLDA-type structure. A dynamic FRS describe statement and a dynamic OpenSQL statement can use the same SQLDA structure if the described fields or table field columns have the same names, lengths, and data types as the columns of the database table specified in the dynamic OpenSQL statement.

Describe Statement and the SQLDA

Dynamic OpenSQL uses the describe statement to return information about the result columns of a select statement. Describing a select tells the program the data types, lengths, and names of the columns retrieved by the select. If you describe a statement other than select, the only information returned is a 0 in the sqlid field. For a complete discussion of how to use describe in a dynamic OpenSQL application, refer to Preparing and Describing the Select Statement in this chapter.

Data Type Codes

The describe statement returns a code indicating the data type of a field or column. This code is returned in sqltype, one of the fields in a sqlvar element. The following table lists the type codes:

Data Type Name	Data Type Code	Nullable
integer	30	No
	-30	Yes
float	31	No
	-31	Yes
decimal	10	No
	-10	Yes
character	20	No
	-20	Yes
varchar	21	No
	-21	Yes
date	3	No
	-3	Yes

If the column, variable, or field described by the sqlvar element is nullable, the type code is returned as a negative value.

The Using Clause

The using clause is an optional clause that provides certain OpenSQL statements with dynamic capabilities. The using clause directs OpenSQL to use the variables pointed to by the sqlvar elements of the SQLDA (or other host variables) when executing the statement.

The syntax of the using clause is shown below:

```
using descriptor descriptor_name
```

Note: The keyword descriptor is optional in some statements that accept the using clause.

The following statements accept the using clause:

- Describe
- Execute
- Execute immediate
- Fetch
- Open
- Prepare

For details about the execute statement, refer to Executing a Dynamic Non-select Statement in this chapter. For details about the execute immediate statement, refer to Executing a Dynamic Select Statement in this chapter.

Dynamic OpenSQL Statements

This section describes the (non-cursor) dynamic OpenSQL statements. Dynamic OpenSQL has four statements that are exclusively used in a dynamic program:

- Execute immediate
- Prepare
- Execute
- Describe

In addition, all statements that support cursors (declare, open, fetch, update, delete) have dynamic versions to support dynamically executed select statements.

Execute Immediate Statement

The execute immediate statement executes an OpenSQL statement specified as a string literal or using a host variable. The execute immediate is most useful when the program intends to execute a statement only once, or when using a select loop with a dynamic select statement.

The execute immediate statement can be used to execute all OpenSQL statements except for the following statements:

call	fetch
close	include
connect	inquire_sql
declare	open
describe	prepare
disconnect	set_sql
execute	whenever

The syntax of execute immediate is as follows:

```
exec sql execute immediate statement_string
    [into variable {, variable} | using [descriptor]
    descriptor_name
    [exec sql begin;
     program_code
    exec sql end;]];
```

The contents of the *statement_string* must not include the keywords, `exec sql`, or a statement terminator. The optional `into/using` clause and `begin/end` statement block can only be used when you are executing a dynamic select statement.

Prepare and Execute Statements

The prepare statement tells OpenSQL to encode the dynamically built statement and assign it the specified name. After a statement is prepared, the program can execute the statement one or more times within a transaction by issuing the execute statement and specifying the statement name.

If your program executes the same statement many times in a transaction, the prepare and execute method can improve the performance of the statement. Committing a transaction discards any statements that were prepared during the transaction.

The following OpenSQL statements cannot be prepared:

call	execute
close	fetch
connect	include
declare	inquire_sql
describe	open
disconnect	set
execute immediate	whenever

The syntax of the prepare statement is as follows:

```
exec sql prepare statement_name
    [into descriptor_name | using descriptor descriptor_name]
    from host_string_variable | string_literal;
```

The *statement_name* can be a string literal or variable. The contents of the host string variable or the string literal cannot include exec sql or the statement terminator.

If the into clause is included in the prepare statement, the prepare statement also describes the statement string into the specified descriptor area and it is not necessary to describe the statement string separately.

The syntax of the execute statement is as follows:

```
exec sql execute statement_name
    [using host_variable {, host_variable}
    | using descriptor descriptor_name];
```

A prepared statement can be fully specified, or some portions can be specified by question marks (?). The portions specified using question marks must be filled in by the using clause when the statement is executed.

Describe Statement

The describe statement describes a prepared OpenSQL statement into a program descriptor (SQLDA) to allow the program to interact with the dynamic statement as though it was hard coded in the program. This statement is used primarily with dynamic select statements.

The syntax for the describe statement is as follows:

```
exec sql describe statement_name into | using descriptor_name;
```

For more information about the describe statement, refer to the Describe Statement and the SQLDA and to the Preparing and Describing the Select Statement topics in this chapter.

Executing a Dynamic Non-select Statement

Use either the execute immediate statement or the combination of prepare and execute to execute a dynamic non-select statement. Execute immediate is most useful if the program executes the statement only once within a transaction. If the program executes the statement many times within a transaction, for example, within a program loop, use the prepare and execute combination: prepare the statement once, then execute as many times as necessary.

If the program does not know whether the statement is a select statement, the program can prepare and describe the statement. The results returned by the describe statement will indicate whether the statement was a select. For more information and a sample of the conditional coding to handle such situations, refer to Executing the Select with Execute Immediate topic in this chapter.

Using Execute Immediate to Execute a Non-select Statement

Execute immediate executes an OpenSQL statement specified using a string literal or host variable. The execute immediate statement can be used to execute all but a few of the OpenSQL statements. For a list of statements that you cannot execute with the execute immediate statement, refer to The Execute Immediate Statement in this chapter.

When the execute immediate statement is used to execute a statement that is not a select, its syntax is as follows:

```
exec sql execute immediate statement_string;
```

For example, the following statement executes a drop statement specified as a string literal:

```
/*  
** Statement specification included  
** in string literal. The string literal does  
** NOT include 'exec sql' or ';'   
*/  
exec sql execute immediate 'drop employee';
```

As another example, the following example reads OpenSQL statements from a file into a host string variable named, *buffer*, and executes the contents of the variable. If the variable includes a statement that cannot be executed by execute immediate, or if another error occurs, the loop is broken.

```
exec sql begin declare section;  
    character buffer(100);  
exec sql end declare section;  
open file;  
loop while not end of file and not error  
  
read statement from file into buffer;  
exec sql execute immediate :buffer;
```

```
end loop;
close file;
```

If only a statement's parameters, such as an employee name or number, change at run time, then you do not need to use execute immediate; you can replace a value with a host variable. For example, the following fragment increases the salaries of all employees with a specific employee number (read out of a file into variable, number):

```
loop while not end of file and not error

read number from file;
exec sql update employee
  set sal = sal * 1.1
  where eno = :number;

end loop;
```

Preparing and Executing a Non-select Statement

The prepare and execute statements can also be used to execute dynamic non-select statements. These two statements, working together, allow your program to save a statement string and execute it as many times as necessary. However, a prepared statement is discarded when the transaction in which it was prepared is rolled back or committed. In addition, if a statement is prepared with the same name as an existing statement, the new statement supersedes the old statement.

The following example demonstrates how a run-time user can prepare (save) a dynamically specified OpenSQL statement and execute it a specific number of times:

```
read OpenSQL statement from terminal into buffer;
exec sql prepare s1 from :buffer;
read number in N
loop N times
  exec sql execute s1;
end loop;
```

The next example illustrates a dynamically prepared query. This example creates a table whose name is the same as the user's name, and inserts into the table a set of rows with fixed-typed parameters (the user's children):

```
get user name from terminal;
buffer = 'create table ' + user_name + '(child
character(15), age integer)';
exec sql execute immediate :buffer;

buffer = 'insert into ' + user_name + '(child, age)
values (?, ?)';
exec sql prepare s1 from :buffer;

read child's name and age from terminal;
loop until no more children
exec sql execute s1 using :child, :age;
```

```
read child's name and age from terminal;  
end loop;
```

There are some statements that cannot be executed using prepare and execute. For a list of these statements, refer to Dynamic OpenSQL Statements in this chapter. For more information about the syntax and use of these statements, refer to the “OpenSQL Statements” chapter.

Executing a Dynamic Select Statement

If you know the data types of the result columns, use the execute immediate statement with the into clause. For details, refer to When the Result Column Data Types are Known topic in this chapter.

If you do not know the data types of the result columns, the select statement must be prepared and described first, then the program can either:

- Use the execute immediate statement with the using clause to execute the select.
- Declare a cursor for the prepared select statement and use the cursor to retrieve the results.

Refer to the When the Result Column Data Types are Unknown topic in this chapter for more information.

The execute immediate option defines a select loop to process the results of the select. Select loops minimize disk and communications I/O but do not allow the program to issue any other OpenSQL statements within the loop. If the program must access the database while processing rows, use the cursor option.

If the program does not know whether the statement is a select, the prepare and describe statements can be used to determine whether the statement is a select. The following example demonstrates the program logic required to accept OpenSQL statements from a user, execute the statements, and print the results. If the statement is a select, the program uses a cursor to execute the query.

```
statement_buffer = ' '  
loop while reading statement_buffer from terminal  
  
exec sql prepare s1 from :statement_buffer;  
exec sql describe s1 into :result_descriptor;  
  
if (sqlca.sqlc = 0) then  
  
exec sql execute s1;  
  
else  
  
/* This is a SELECT */  
exec sql declare c1 cursor for s1;  
exec sql open c1;
```

```

allocate result_variables using result_descriptor;

loop while there are more rows in the cursor

exec sql fetch c1 using descriptor
      :result_descriptor;
      if (sqlca.sqlcode not equal 100) then
        print the row using result_descriptor;
      end if;

end loop;

free result_variables from result_descriptor;

exec sql close c1;

end if;

process sqlca for status;

end loop;

```

When the Result Column Data Types are Known

If the program knows the data types of the resulting columns and of the result variables used to store the column values, the program can execute the select statement using the execute immediate statement with the into clause.

In the following example, a database contains several password tables, each having one column and one row and containing a password value. An application connected to this database requires a user to correctly enter two passwords before continuing. The first password entered is actually the name of a password table and the second is the password value in that table.

The following code uses the execute immediate statement to execute the dynamically defined select built by the application to check these passwords:

```

...
exec frs prompt noecho ('First Password: ',
  :table_password);
exec frs prompt noecho ('Second Password: ',
  :value_password);

select_stmt = 'select column1 from ' +
  table_password;
exec sql execute immediate :select_stmt
  into :result_password;
if (sqlcode < 0) or (value_password <>
  result_password)
then
  exec frs message 'Password authorization failure';
endif
...

```

Because the application's developer knows the data type of the column in the password table (although not which password table will be selected), the developer can execute the dynamic select with the execute immediate statement and the into clause.

The syntax of execute immediate in this context is shown below:

```
exec sql execute immediate select_statement
      into variable {, variable};
[exec sql begin;
      host_code
exec sql end;]
```

This syntax retrieves the results of the select into the specified host variables. The begin and end statements define a select loop that processes each row returned by the select statement and terminates when there are no more rows to process. If a select loop is used, your program cannot issue any other OpenSQL statements for the duration of the loop.

If the select loop is not included in the statement, OpenSQL assumes that the select statement is a singleton select returning only one row and, if more than one row is returned, issues an error.

When the Result Column Data Types are Unknown

In most instances, when executing a dynamically defined select statement, the program does not know the number or types of result columns. To provide this information to the program, first prepare and then describe the select statement. The describe statement returns to the program the type description of the result columns of a prepared select statement. After the select is described, the program must dynamically allocate (or reference) the correct number of result storage areas of the correct size and type to receive the results of the select.

If the statement is not a select statement, describe returns a zero to the sqlcd and no sqlvar elements are used.

After the statement has been prepared and described and the result variables allocated, the program has two choices regarding the execution of the select statement:

- The program can associate the statement name with a cursor name, open the cursor, fetch the results into the allocated result storage area (one row at a time), and close the cursor.
- The program can use execute immediate, which allows you to define a select loop to process the returned rows. If the select will return only one row, then it is not necessary to define the select loop.

Preparing and Describing the Select Statement

If the program has no advance knowledge of the resulting columns, the first step in executing a dynamic select statement is to prepare and describe the statement. Preparing the statement encodes and saves the statement and assigns it a name. For information about the syntax and use of prepare, refer to the Prepare and Execute Statements in this chapter.

The describe statement returns descriptive information about a prepared statement into a program descriptor, that is, an SQLDA structure. This statement is primarily used to return information about the result columns of a select statement to the program, but other statements can be described. When describing a non-select statement, the only information returned to the program is that the statement was not a select statement.

The syntax of the describe statement is shown below:

```
exec sql describe statement_name into|using descriptor_name;
```

When a select statement is described, OpenSQL returns the information about each result column to a sqlvar element. (For information about sqlvar elements, refer to the Structure of the SQLDA in this chapter.) This is a one-to-one correspondence: the information in one sqlvar element corresponds to one result column. Before issuing the describe statement, the program must allocate sufficient sqlvar elements and set the SQLDA sqln field to the number of allocated sqlvars. The program must set sqln before the describe statement is issued.

After issuing the describe statement, the program must check the value of sqld, which contains the number of sqlvar elements actually used to describe the statement. If sqld is zero, the prepared statement was not a select statement. If sqld is greater than sqln, the SQLDA does not have enough sqlvar elements: more storage must be allocated and the statement must be redescribed.

The following fragment shows a typical describe statement and the surrounding host program code. The program assumes that 20 sqlvar elements will be sufficient:

```
sqlda.sqln = 20;
exec sql describe s1 into sqlda;

if (sqlda.sqld = 0) then
    statement is not a select statement;
else if (sqlda.sqld > sqlda.sqln) then
    save sqld;
    free current sqlda;
    allocate new sqlda using sqld as the size;
    sqlda.sqln = sqld;
    exec sql describe s1 into sqlda;
end if;
```

Analyzing the Sqlvar Elements

After describing a statement, the program must analyze the contents of the sqlvar array. Each element of the sqlvar array describes one result column of the select statement. Together, all the sqlvar elements describe one complete row of the result table.

The describe statement sets the data type, length, and name of the result column (sqltype, sqllen and sqlname), and the program must use that information to supply the address of the result variable and result indicator variable (sqldata and sqlind).

For example, assuming the table, object, was created as follows:

```
exec sq create table object
(o_id integer not null,
 o_desc character(100) not null,
 o_price float not null,
 o_sold date);
```

and the following dynamic query was described as follows:

```
exec sql prepare s1 from 'select * from object';
exec sql describe s1 into sqlda;
```

The SQLDA descriptor results would be:

sqld	4 (columns)
sqlvar(1)	sqltype = 30 (integer) sqllen = 4 sqlname = 'o_id'
sqlvar(2)	sqltype = 20 (character) sqllen = 100 sqlname = 'o_desc'
sqlvar(3)	sqltype = 31 (float) sqllen = 8 sqlname = 'o_price'
sqlvar(4)	sqltype = -3 (date) sqllen = 0 sqlname = 'o_sold'

The describe statement sets the value of `sqlen` to the length of the result column. For character data types, `sqlen` is set to the maximum length of the character string. For numeric data types, `sqlen` is set to the size of the numeric field as declared when created. For the date data type, `sqlen` is set to 0, but the program should use a 25-byte character string to retrieve or set date data. Note that, for nullable columns, a negative value is returned.

After the statement is described, your program must analyze the values of `sqltype` and `sqlen` in each `sqlvar` element. If `sqltype` and `sqlen` do not correspond exactly with the types of variables used by the program to process the select statement, then `sqltype` and `sqlen` must be modified to be consistent with the program variables. After describing a select statement, there will be one `sqlvar` element for each expression in the select target list.

After processing the values of `sqltype` and `sqlen`, allocate storage for the variables that will contain the values in the result columns of the select statement, by pointing `sqldata` at a host language variable that will contain the result data. If the value of `sqltype` is negative, which indicates a nullable result column data type, allocate an indicator variable for the particular result column and set `sqlind` to point to the indicator variable. If `sqltype` is positive, indicating that the result column data type is not nullable, an indicator variable is not required. In this case, set `sqlind` to zero.

To omit the null indicator for a nullable result column (`sqltype` is negative), set `sqltype` to its positive value and `sqlind` to zero. If `sqltype` is positive and an indicator variable is allocated, set `sqltype` to its negative value, and set `sqlind` to point to the indicator variable.

In the above example, after the program analyzes the results as described, the date type is changed to character and `sqlind` and `sqldata` are set to appropriate values. The values in the resulting `sqlvar` elements are:

```
sqlvar(1)  sqltype = 30 (integer),
           sqlen  = 4,
           sqldata = Address of 4-byte integer,
           sqlind  = 0,
           sqlname = 'o_id'
sqlvar(2)  sqltype = 20 (character),
           sqlen  = 100,
           sqldata = Address of 100-byte character string,
           sqlind  = 0,
           sqlname = 'o_desc'
```

```

sqlvar(3)  sqltype = 31 (float),
           sqlllen = 8
           sqldata = Address of 8-byte floating point,
           sqlind = 0,
           sqlname = 'o_price'
sqlvar(4)  sqltype = -30 (Nullable character, was date),
           sqlllen = 25, (was 0)
           sqldata = Address of 25-byte character string,
           sqlind = Address of 2-byte indicator variable,
           sqlname = 'o_sold'

```

Executing the Select with Execute Immediate

You can execute a dynamic select statement that has been prepared and described with an execute immediate statement that includes the using clause. The using clause tells OpenSQL to place the values returned by the select into the variables pointed to by the elements of the SQLDA sqlvar array. If the select will return more than one row, you can also define a select loop to process each row before another is returned.

The syntax of execute immediate in this context is shown below:

```

exec sql execute immediate select_statement
      using [descriptor] descriptor_name;
[exec sql begin;
  host_code
exec sql end;]

```

Within a select loop, no OpenSQL statements other than an endselect can be issued. For selects without select loops, OpenSQL issues an error if more than one row is returned.

To illustrate this option, the following example contains a dynamic select. The results of the select statement are used to generate a report.

```

...
allocate an sqlda
read the dynamic select from the terminal into a
stmt_buffer

exec sql prepare s1 from :stmt_buffer;
exec sql describe s1 into :sqlda;
if (sqlca.sqlcode < 0) or (sqlda.sqld = 0) then
  print ('Error or statement is not a select');
  return;
else if (sqlda.sqld > sqlda.sqln) then
  allocate a new sqlda;
  exec sql describe s1 into :sqlda;
endif;

```

```

analyze the results and allocate variables

exec sql execute immediate :stmt_buffer
  using descriptor :sqlda;
exec sql begin;
process results, generating report
if error occurs, then
  exec sql endselect;
endif
exec sql end;
...

```

Using a Cursor to Retrieve the Results

To give your program the ability to access the database or issue other database statements while processing rows retrieved as the result of the select, use a cursor to retrieve those rows.

To use cursors, after the SQLDA has been analyzed and result variables have been allocated and pointed at, the program must declare and open a cursor in order to fetch the result rows. The syntax of the cursor declaration for a dynamically defined select statement is as follows:

```
exec sql declare cursor_name cursor for statement_name;
```

This statement associates the select statement represented by *statement_name* with the specified cursor. *Statement_name* is the name assigned to the statement when the statement was prepared. As with non-dynamic cursor declarations, the select statement is not evaluated until the cursor is actually opened. After opening the cursor, the program retrieves the result rows using the fetch statement with the SQLDA instead of the list of output variables. The syntax for a cursor fetch statement is as follows:

```
exec sql fetch cursor_name using descriptor descriptor_name;
```

Before the fetch statement, the program has filled the result descriptor with the addresses of the result storage areas. When executing the fetch statement, OpenSQL copies the result columns into the result areas referenced by the descriptor.

The following program fragment elaborates on an earlier example in this section. The program reads a statement from the terminal. If the statement is quit, the program ends. Otherwise, the program prepares the statement. If the statement is not a select, then it is executed. If the statement is a select statement, then it is described, a cursor is opened, and the result rows are fetched. Error handling is not shown.

```

exec sql include sqlca;
exec sql include sqlda;

allocate an sqlda with 300 sqlvar elements;
sqlda.sqln = 300;

read statement_buffer from terminal;

```

```
loop while (statement_buffer <> 'quit')

exec sql prepare s1 from :statement_buffer;
exec sql describe s1 into sqlda;

if (sqlca.sqlcd = 0) then /* This is not a select */
  exec sql execute s1;
else /* This is a select */
  exec sql declare c1 cursor for s1;
  exec sql open c1;

  print column headers from the sqlname fields;
  analyze the SQLDA, inspecting types and lengths;
  allocate result variables for a cursor result row;
  set sqlvar fields sqldata and sqlind;

  loop while (sqlca.sqlcode = 0)
    exec sql fetch c1 using descriptor sqlda;
    if (sqlca.sqlcode = 0) then
      print the row using sqldata and sqlind
      pointed at by the sqlvar array;
    end if;
  end loop;

  free result variables from the sqlvar elements;

  exec sql close c1;

end if;

process sqlca and print the status;
read statement_buffer from terminal;

end loop;
```

OpenSQL Features

This chapter discusses the following features of OpenSQL:

- Transactions
- Status information and error handling
- Multiple session connections
- Database procedures
- DBMS-specific extensions (using the with clause and the direct execute immediate statement)

Transactions

A *transaction* is one or more OpenSQL statements processed as a single, indivisible database action. A transaction that consists of a single OpenSQL statement is sometimes called a single query transaction (SQT). If the transaction contains multiple statements, it is often called a multiple query transaction (MQT).

By default, all transactions are multiple query transactions. The transaction begins with the first OpenSQL statement following a connect, commit, or rollback statement, which can be issued by you, the program, or in some instances, by the DBMS. The transaction continues until there is an explicit commit or rollback statement or until the session terminates. (Terminating the session or disconnecting from the database normally issues an implicit commit statement. If the session or connection terminates abnormally, the results depend on the host DBMS.)

In EDBC products, transactions are managed by the underlying DBMS. Transaction handling may vary depending on the DBMS to which your session is connected. For example, some DBMSs begin a transaction immediately following the connect or rollback statements, rather than awaiting the next OpenSQL statement. For details, refer to the documentation for the host DBMS.

None of the database changes made by a transaction are visible to other sessions until the transaction is committed. In a multi-user environment, where many transactions may be executing simultaneously, this behavior maintains database consistency. For example, if two transactions are updating the same information in a table, the DBMS must ensure that one transaction's updates are complete before allowing the other to proceed.

Controlling Transactions

The commit and rollback statements allow control of the effects of a transaction on the database:

- The commit statement makes the changes permanent.
- The rollback statement undoes the changes made by the transaction.

When a commit statement is issued, the DBMS makes all changes resulting from the transaction permanent, terminates the transaction, and drops any locks held during the transaction. When a rollback statement is issued, the DBMS undoes any database changes made by the transaction, terminates the transaction, and releases any locks held during the transaction.

Committing Transactions

Transactions are composed of one or more OpenSQL statements. In general, a transaction begins with the first statement after connection to the database or the first statement following a commit or rollback. The precise starting point of a transaction depends on the DBMS to which you are connected. Subsequent statements are part of the transaction until a commit or rollback is executed. By default, an explicit commit or rollback must be issued to close a transaction.

To direct the DBMS to commit each database statement individually, use the set autocommit on statement. (This statement cannot be issued in an open transaction.) When autocommit is set on, a commit occurs automatically after every statement, except prepare and describe. If autocommit is on and a cursor is opened, the server or ODBC product does not issue a commit until the close cursor statement is executed, because cursors are logically a single statement. A rollback statement can be issued when a cursor is open. To restore the default behavior (and enable multiquery transactions), issue the set autocommit off statement.

To determine whether you are in a transaction, use the inquire_sql statement. For information about inquire_sql, refer to Retrieving Status Information in this chapter and the Inquire_sql topic in the "OpenSQL Statements" chapter. To find out if autocommit is on or off, use dbmsinfo. For information about dbmsinfo, refer to the Dbmsinfo Function in this chapter.

Aborting Statements and Transactions

Transactions and statements can be aborted by an application or by the DBMS. Applications can abort transactions or statements as a result of:

- Rollback statement
- Timeout (if available and set)

The DBMS aborts statements and transactions as a result of the following conditions:

- Deadlock
- Error while executing a database statement

Effects of Aborting Transactions

When a statement or transaction is aborted:

- Rolling back a single statement does not cause the DBMS to release any locks held by the transaction. Locks are released when the transaction ends.
- If cursors are open, the entire transaction is always aborted.
- When an entire transaction is aborted, all open cursors are closed, and all prepared statements are invalidated.

Interrupting Transactions

The effect of a keyboard interrupt (Ctrl+C or Ctrl+Y) on a transaction depends on the ODBC product and underlying DBMS. Refer to the DBMS documentation for details.

Retrieving Status Information

The following features enable your application program to obtain status information:

- **Dbmsinfo** - Returns information about the current session.
- **Inquire_sql** - Returns information about the last database statement that was executed.
- **Inquire_frs** - Returns information about the forms system.
- **SQLCA** (SQL Communications Area) - Returns status and error information about the last OpenSQL statement that was executed.

These statements are described in the following sections.

The Dbmsinfo Function

Dbmsinfo is a function that returns a string containing information about the current session. This statement can be used in the Terminal Monitor or in an embedded OpenSQL application. The dbmsinfo statement has the following syntax:

```
select dbmsinfo ('request_name') [as result_column]
```

For example, to determine which version of the EDBC product or server you are using, enter:

```
select dbmsinfo('_version');
```

In OpenSQL, only one dbmsinfo request is allowed per select statement. In addition, when issuing a select dbmsinfo statement, you cannot specify other select statement clauses (such as from or where).

The following table lists valid *request_names*:

Request Name	Response Description
autocommit_state	Returns 1 if autocommit is on; 0 if autocommit is off.
_bintim	Returns the current time and date in an internal format, represented as the number of seconds since January 1, 1970 00:00:00 GMT.
database	Returns the name of the database to which the session is connected.
dba	Returns the DBMS username of the database owner.
_et_sec	Returns the elapsed time for session, in seconds.
query_language	Returns query language in use ("SQL").
server_class	Returns the class of DBMS server, for example "db2".
terminal	Returns the terminal address for local connections.
transaction_state	Returns 1 if presently in a transaction, 0 if not.
username	Returns the DBMS user name of the current session's user (like user).
_version	Returns the DBMS version number.

The Inquire_sql Statement

The `inquire_sql` statement returns information about the results of the last OpenSQL database statement issued by a session. Using `inquire_sql` you can obtain a variety of information, including:

- Error number and text (if the last statement resulted in an error)
- Type of error being returned (for details, see the Local and Generic Errors topic in this chapter)
- Whether a transaction is open
- Session identifier (in multiple-session applications)

For details about `inquire_sql`, refer to the “OpenSQL Statements” chapter.

Note: The `inquire_sql` statement does not return status information about forms statements. Use the `inquire_frs` statement to obtain information about forms statements.

The SQL Communications Area (SQLCA)

The SQL Communications Area (SQLCA) consists of a number of variables that contain error and status information accessible by the program. This information reflects only the status of executed embedded OpenSQL database statements. Forms statements do not affect these variables. Because each embedded OpenSQL statement has the potential to change values in the SQLCA, the application must perform any checking and consequent processing required to deal with a status condition immediately after the statement in question. Otherwise, the next executed OpenSQL statement might change the status information in the variables.

Each host language implements the SQLCA structure differently. Refer to your host language companion guide for instructions on how to include the SQLCA in your applications.

The following list describes the variables that compose the SQLCA (not all of the variables are currently used):

<code>sqlcaid</code>	An 8-byte character string variable initialized to “SQLCA ”. This value does not change.
<code>sqlcabc</code>	A 4-byte integer variable initialized to the length in bytes of the SQLCA, 136. This value also does not change.

sqlcode	<p>A 4-byte integer variable indicating the OpenSQL return code. Its value falls into one of three categories:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">= 0 The statement executed successfully (though there may have been warning messages - refer to sqlwarn0).< 0 An error occurred. The value of sqlcode is the negative value of the error number returned to errno. (For a discussion of errno, refer to Error Handling in this chapter.) A negative value sets the sqlerror condition of the whenever statement.>0 The statement executed successfully but an exceptional condition occurred. The value +100 indicates that no rows were processed by a delete, fetch, insert, select, update, modify, copy, create index, or create...as select statement. This value (+100) sets the not found condition of the whenever statement.
sqlerrm	<p>A varying-length character string variable composed of an initial 2-byte count and a 70-byte long buffer. This variable is used for error messages. When an error occurs for a database statement, the leading 70 characters of the error message are assigned to this variable. If the message contained within the variable is less than 70 characters, the variable contains the complete error message. Otherwise, the variable contains a truncated error message.</p> <p>To retrieve the full error message, use the inquire_sql statement with the errortext object. If no errors occur, sqlerrm will contain blanks. For some languages this variable is divided into two other variables: sqlerrml, a 2-byte integer count indicating how many characters are in the buffer, and sqlerrmc, a 70-byte fixed-length character string buffer.</p>
sqlerrp	<p>8-byte character string variable, currently unused.</p>
sqlerrd	<p>An array of six 4-byte integers. Currently only sqlerrd(1) and sqlerrd(3) are in use. sqlerrd(1) is used to store error numbers returned by the server. For more information about sqlerrd(1), refer to Local and Generic Errors in this chapter.</p> <p>sqlerrd (3) indicates the number of rows processed by a delete, fetch, insert, select, update, copy, modify, create index, or create...as select statement. All other database statements reset this variable to zero. Some host languages start array subscripts at 0. In these languages (C, BASIC), use the subscript 2 to select the third array variable.</p>

sqlwarn0 through sqlwarn7	A set of eight 1-byte character variables that denote warnings when set to "W." The default values are blanks.
sqlwarn0	If set to "W," at least one other sqlwarn contains a "W." When "W" is set, the sqlwarning condition of the whenever statement is set.
sqlwarn1	Set to "W" on truncation of a character string assignment from the database into a host variable. If an indicator variable is associated with the host variable, the indicator variable is set to the original length of the character string.
sqlwarn2	Set to "W" on elimination of nulls from aggregates.
sqlwarn3	Set to "W" when mismatching number of result columns and result host variables in a fetch or select statement.
sqlwarn4	Set to "W" when preparing (prepare) an update or delete statement without a where clause.
sqlwarn5	Currently unused.
sqlwarn6	Set to "W" when the error returned in sqlcode caused the abnormal termination of an open transaction.
sqlwarn7	Currently unused.
sqlxext	An 8-byte character string variable not currently in use.

Error Handling

The following section describes the types of errors returned to OpenSQL sessions, and the methods used to handle errors.

The SQLSTATE Variable

The SQLSTATE variable is a 5-character string in which OpenSQL returns the status of the last SQL statement executed. The values returned in SQLSTATE are specified in the ANSI/ISO Entry SQL-92 standard. For details about the requirements for declaring the SQLSTATE variable in embedded programs, refer to your host language companion guide.

If queries are executed while connected to a DBMS that does not support SQLSTATE, SQLSTATE is set to '5000K' (meaning "SQLSTATE not available"). This result does not necessarily mean that an error occurred. To check the results of the query, one of the other error-checking methods must be used. SQLSTATE is not available within database procedures. However, a routine that directly executes a database procedure can check SQLSTATE to determine the result of the procedure call.

The following is a brief example illustrating the use of SQLSTATE in an embedded program:

```
exec sql begin declare section;
    character    SQLSTATE(5)
exec sql end declare section;
exec sql connect mydatabase;
if SQLSTATE <> "00000" print 'Error on connection!'
```

For a list mapping generic errors to SQLSTATE values, refer to the "Generic Error Codes" appendix.

Local and Generic Errors

A local error is a specific error issued by a specific server, such as the EDBC for DB2 product. All server-specific local errors are also mapped into generic errors, enabling applications to handle errors returned from a variety of servers in a consistent way.

To handle errors consistently, OpenSQL maps the different local timeout error numbers to the same generic error number.

By default, EDBC products and servers return errors as follows:

- Generic errors
 - Returned to sqlcode (an SQLCA variable) as a negative value.
 - Returned when your application issues the inquire_sql(errorno) statement.
- Local errors
 - Returned in sqlerrd(1), the first element of the SQLCA sqlerrd array.
 - Returned when your application issues the inquire_sql(dbmserror) statement.

To reverse this arrangement (so that local error numbers are returned to `errno` and `sqlcode` and generic errors to `dbmserror` and `sqlerrd(1)`), use the `set_sql(errortype)` statement. To obtain the text of error messages, use the `inquire_sql(errortext)` statement or check the SQLCA variable `sqlerrm`.

Reading an OpenSQL Error Message

Every generic error message consists of an error code and the accompanying error message text.

All generic error codes begin with `E_`, followed by one or two letters plus a 4-digit hexadecimal number, and, optionally, descriptive text or the decimal equivalent of the hex error code. For example:

```
E_GEC2EC_SERIALIZATION
```

indicates a serialization failure (deadlock).

The content and format of local error messages are determined by the local DBMS. For details, refer to the EDBC product or host DBMS installation guide.

Displaying an Error Message

If you are working in one of the forms-based user interfaces, such as the Terminal Monitor, error messages display on a single line across the bottom of the terminal screen. The text appears first, followed by the error code. If the text is longer than one line, press the Help key to display the rest of the message. To clear the error message from the screen, press the Return key.

If you are not working in a forms-based user interface, OpenSQL displays the error code followed by the entire message text.

If you have included an SQLCA, embedded OpenSQL applications do not automatically display error messages. You must provide program code that does this.

Handling Errors in Embedded Applications

OpenSQL provides a variety of tools for trapping and handling errors in embedded applications, including:

- The SQLCA
- The whenever statement
- Handler routines
- Inquire statements
- The IIserr function

Obtaining Error Information from the SQLCA

The SQL Communications Area (SQLCA) is a collection of host language variables whose values provide status and error information about embedded OpenSQL database statements. (The status of forms statements is not reflected in SQLCA variables.) If your application does not have an SQLCA, the default is to display errors and continue with the next statement if possible.

Two variables in the SQLCA contain error information: `sqlcode` and `sqlerrm`. The value in `sqlcode` indicates one of three conditions:

- **Success** - `Sqlcode` contains zero.
- **Error** - `Sqlcode` contains the error number as a negative value.
- **Warning** - (Set when the statement executed successfully but an exceptional condition occurred.) `Sqlcode` contains +100, indicating that no rows were processed by a delete, fetch, insert, update, modify, copy, or create table...as statement.

The `sqlerrm` variable is a varying length character string variable that contains the text of the error message. The maximum length of `sqlerrm` is 70 bytes. If the error message exceeds that length, OpenSQL truncates the message when it assigns it to `sqlerrm`. To retrieve the full message, use the `inquire_sql` statement (refer to The `Inquire_sql` Statement in this chapter). In some host languages, this variable has two parts: `sqlerrml`, a 2-byte integer indicating how many characters are in the buffer, and `sqlerrmc`, a 70-byte fixed length character string buffer.

The SQLCA also contains eight 1-byte character variables, `sqlwarn0` - `sqlwarn7`, that are used to indicate warnings. For a complete listing of these, refer to The SQL Communications Area (SQLCA) in this chapter.

The SQLCA is often used in conjunction with the whenever statement, which defines a condition and an action to take whenever that condition is true. The conditions are set to true by values in the sqlcode variable. For example, if sqlcode contains a negative error number, then the sqlerror condition of the whenever statement is true, and any action specified for that condition is performed.

You can also access the SQLCA variables directly. Refer to your host language companion guide for information about implementing the SQLCA in an application and using its variables.

Trapping Errors Using the Whenever Statement

The whenever statement specifies a particular action to be performed whenever a particular condition is true. Since conditions are set to true by values in the SQLCA sqlcode, the whenever statement responds only to errors generated by embedded OpenSQL database statements. Forms statements do not set sqlcode.

The conditions that indicate errors or warnings are listed in the following table:

Condition	Description
sqlwarning	Indicates that the executed OpenSQL database statement produced a warning condition. Sqlwarning becomes true when the SQLCA sqlwarn0 variable is set to "W."
sqlerror	Indicates that an error occurred in the execution of the database statement. Sqlerror becomes true when the SQLCA sqlcode variable contains a negative number.

There are two other conditions that are more closely related to status conditions rather than error conditions. For a complete list of the conditions, refer to the Whenever topic in the "OpenSQL Statements" chapter. The actions that can be specified for these conditions are listed in the following table:

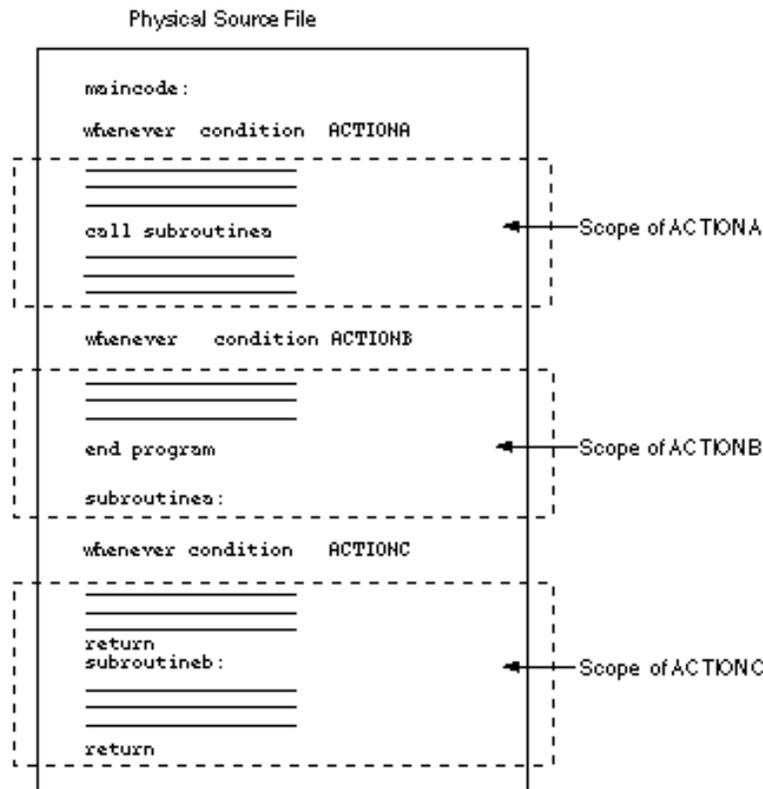
Action	Description
continue	Execution continues with the next statement.
stop	Prints an error message and terminates the program's execution. Pending updates are not committed.
goto <i>label</i>	Performs a host language "go to."
call <i>procedure</i>	Calls the specified host language procedure. If call sqlprint is specified, the sqlprint procedure prints the error or warning message and continues with the next statement.

In an application program, a whenever statement is in effect until the next whenever statement (or the end of the program). For example, if you put the following statement in your program:

```
exec sql whenever sqlerror call myhandler;
```

OpenSQL traps errors for all database statements in your program that physically follow the whenever statement to the procedure, myhandler. A whenever statement does not affect the statements that physically precede it.

The following diagram illustrates the scope of the whenever statement.



If your program includes an SQLCA, OpenSQL will not display error messages unless your application issues a whenever ... sqlprint statement, or you set II_EMBED_SET to sqlprint.

Defining an Error Handler

An error handling function can be defined to be called when OpenSQL errors occur. To do this, you must:

- Write the error handling routine and link it into your embedded OpenSQL application.

- In the application, issue the following set statement:

```
exec sql set_sql(errorhandler = error_routine)
```

where *error_routine* is the name of the error-handling routine you created. Do not declare *error_routine* in an OpenSQL declare section, and do not precede *error_routine* with a colon (:). The *error_routine* argument must be a function pointer.

When this form of error-trapping is enabled, all OpenSQL errors are trapped to your routine until you disable error-trapping (or until the application terminates). Forms errors are not trapped.

To disable the trapping of errors to your routine, your application must issue the following set statement:

```
exec sql set_sql(errorhandler = 0 | :error_var)
```

where *error_var* is a host integer variable having a value of 0.

Your error-handling routine must not issue any database statements in the same session in which the error occurred. If it is necessary to issue database statements in an error handler, open a session or switch to another session.

To obtain error information, your error-handling routine should issue the `inquire_sql` statement.

Obtaining Error Information Using Inquire Statements

There are two inquire statements that can perform error checking: `inquire_sql` and `inquire_frs`. Both statements return error numbers and the associated error text using the constants `errorno` and `errortext`. `Inquire_sql` returns the error number and text for the last executed OpenSQL database statement. `Inquire_frs` returns information about the last executed forms statement.

Unlike the `whenever` statement, an inquire statement must be executed immediately after the database or forms statement in question. The `inquire_sql` returns a generic error number in `errorno` by default. OpenSQL can be directed to return a local error number in `errorno`. For more information, refer to Local and Generic Errors in this chapter.

Neither of the inquire statements suppress the display of error messages. Both of the inquire statements return a wide variety of information in addition to error numbers and text. For a complete list of the information returned by `inquire_sql`, refer to the “OpenSQL Statements” chapter.

Suppressing Error Messages

The `IIseterr` function is a feature that allows the display of error messages to be suppressed. If `IIseterr` is used in an embedded OpenSQL program that makes use of the SQLCA, errors returned by embedded OpenSQL database statements do not interact with `IIseterr`. If your program does not use the SQLCA, errors resulting from both forms statements and embedded OpenSQL database statements are passed through `IIseterr`, if it is present. For ease of use and implementation, it is recommended that you use the SQLCA and whenever statements to handle embedded OpenSQL database statement errors.

Specifying Program Termination on Errors

The `set_sql(programquit)` statement specifies how an embedded OpenSQL application handles the following types of errors:

- Attempting to execute a query when not connected to a database
- EDBC product or DBMS server failure
- Communications service failure

By default, when these types of errors occur, OpenSQL issues an error but lets the program continue. To force an application to abort when one of these errors occur, issue the following `set_sql` statement:

```
exec sql set_sql (programquit = 1);
```

If an application aborts as the result of one of the previously listed errors, OpenSQL issues an error, then rolls back open transactions and disconnects all open sessions. (To disable aborting and restore the OpenSQL default behavior, specify `programquit = 0`.)

Errors affected by the `programquit` setting belong to the generic error class `GE_COMM_ERROR`, which is returned to `errno` as 37000, and to `sqlcode` (in the SQLCA) as -37000. An application can check for these errors and, when detected, must disconnect from the current session. After disconnecting from the current session, the application can attempt another connection, switch to another session (if using multiple sessions), or perform clean-up operations and quit.

You can also specify `programquit` using `II_EMBED_SET`.

To determine the current setting for this behavior, use the `inquire_sql` statement:

```
exec sql inquire_sql (int_variable = programquit);
```

This returns a 0 if `programquit` is not set (OpenSQL continues on any of the errors) or 1 if `programquit` is set (OpenSQL exits the application on these errors).

Handling Deadlock

Deadlock occurs when two transactions are each waiting for the other to release a part of the database to enable it to complete its update. Transactions that handle deadlocks in conjunction with other errors can be difficult to code and test, especially if cursors are involved.

To facilitate the proper coding and testing for these situations, we have included three template programs that can be used as guides in your resolution of similar error situations. Deadlock conditions are identified by the generic error code value of `E_GEC2EC_SERIALIZATION`.

The following templates assume the default OpenSQL transaction behavior (set `autocommit` is off).

Non-cursor Template

This template assumes your transactions do not contain a cursor.

```
exec sql whenever not found continue;
exec sql whenever sqlwarning continue;
exec sql whenever sqlerror goto err;
/* branch on error */

start:
exec sql insert into ...
exec sql update ...
exec sql select ...

exec sql commit;
goto end;
err:
exec sql whenever sqlerror call sqlprint;
  if (sqlca.sqlcode = E_GEC2EC_SERIALIZATION) then
    goto start;
  else if (sqlca.sqlcode < 0) then
    exec sql inquire_sql (:err_msg = errortext);
    exec sql rollback;
    print 'Error', err_msg;
  end if;

end:
```

Single Cursor Template

This template is similar to the first, but with a single cursor added.

```
exec sql whenever not found continue;
exec sql whenever sqlwarning continue;
exec sql whenever sqlerror goto err;
/* branch on error */

exec sql declare c1 cursor for ...
```

```
start:
exec sql open c1;
while more rows loop
  exec sql fetch c1 into ...
  if (sqlca.sqlcode = E_GE0064_NO_MORE_DATA) then
    exec sql close c1;
    exec sql commit;
    goto end;
  end if;

  exec sql insert into ...
  exec sql update ...
  exec sql select ...

end loop;
goto end

err:
exec sql whenever sqlerror call sqlprint;
if (sqlca.sqlcode = E_GEC2EC_SERIALIZATION) then
  goto start;
else if (sqlca.sqlcode \ 0) then
  exec sql inquire_sql (:err_msg = errortext);
  exec sql rollback;
  print 'Error', err_msg;
end if;

end:
```

Master/Detail Template

This template is like the previous, but with two cursors (two cursors with a master/detail relationship).

```
exec sql whenever not found continue;
exec sql whenever sqlwarning continue;
exec sql whenever sqlerror goto err;
/* branch on error */

exec sql declare master cursor for ...
exec sql declare detail cursor for ...

start:
exec sql open master;
while more master rows loop
  exec sql fetch master into ...
  if (sqlca.sqlcode = E_GE0064_NO_MORE_DATA) then
    exec sql close master;
    exec sql commit;
    goto end;
  end if;

/* ...queries using master data... */
exec sql insert into ...
exec sql update ...
exec sql select ...
```

```

exec sql open detail;
while more detail rows loop
exec sql fetch detail into ...
if (sqlca.sqlcode = E_GE0064_NO_MORE_DATA) then
exec sql close detail;
end loop; /* drops out of detail fetch loop */
end if;

/* ...queries using detail & master data... */
exec sql insert into ...
exec sql update ...
exec sql select ...

end loop; /* end of detail fetch loop */

/* ...more queries using master data... */
exec sql insert into ...
exec sql update ...
exec sql select ...

end loop; /* end of master fetch loop */
goto end

err:
exec sql whenever sqlerror call sqlprint;
if (sqlca.sqlcode = E_GEC2EC_SERIALIZATION) then
goto start;
else if (sqlca.sqlcode < 0) then
exec sql inquire_sql (:err_msg = errortext);
exec sql rollback;
print 'Error', err_msg;
end if;
end:

```

Multiple Session Connections

OpenSQL provides embedded applications with the ability to maintain multiple sessions. An application can open an initial session and, with subsequent connect statements, open additional sessions with the same or different types of servers or ODBC products.

Connecting to Multiple Sessions

Individual sessions in a multiple session application are identified by a session identifier that is specified when the connect statement for each session is issued. Each connect statement in a multiple session application, including the first connect statement, must specify a session identifier.

It is possible to open new sessions with previously unconnected databases or with databases already associated with an open session. New sessions can be opened under different user names (for ODBC products that support the connect statement's identified by clause) and can be entered using different option flags. Refer to the Connect statement for a description of connect syntax and optional flags.

Once an application issues a connect statement, the session initiated by the statement is the current session and all subsequent embedded OpenSQL statements apply to the database associated with that statement until another connect statement or a set_sql statement (to switch sessions) is issued.

If an error occurs during a connection attempt, the program is no longer connected to any session after the failure, whether or not it was connected before the attempted connection. After the failure of an attempt to connect, the program must either attempt to connect again or switch to a previously established session before continuing.

Switching Sessions

To switch from one open session to another, use the set_sql statement. To open a new session, issue the connect statement. To determine the session identifier for the current session, use the inquire_sql statement.

Applications can switch sessions freely. Note that session switching is supported under the following circumstances:

- Within a transaction
- While cursors are open
- Within OpenSQL statement blocks (such as select loops)

The code for the nested session must be inside a host language subroutine. If it is not, the SQL preprocessor will issue an error.

- Within subroutines called by a whenever statement

After an application switches sessions, the error information obtained from the SQLCA or the inquire_sql statement is not updated until an OpenSQL statement has completed in the new session.

Terminating a Session

To terminate the current session, the application issues the disconnect statement. An optional session identifier parameter exists to identify the current session specifically if desired.

When an application terminates one of many open sessions, it is not automatically placed in another session. The application must issue either a connect or set_sql statement to establish the current session. If the application fails to do this, OpenSQL returns an error when the next OpenSQL statement is issued.

To terminate a specific session, specify the session identifier. To obtain the session identifier for the current session, issue the `inquire_sql(:session_id=session)` statement. To disconnect all sessions, issue the `disconnect all` statement.

Multiple Sessions and the SQLCA

The SQL Communications Area (SQLCA) is a data area in which OpenSQL passes query status information to your application program. Although an application can sustain multiple sessions, there is only one SQLCA per application. By contrast, the values returned by `inquire_sql(errorcode)` and `inquire_sql(errortext)` are specific to a session.

If you switch sessions in a select loop (for example, by calling a routine that switches sessions) and execute database statements in the alternate session, the values in the SQLCA will be reset. When you return to the original session, the SQLCA will not reflect the results of the select loop.

When switching between sessions, the values in the SQLCA fields are not updated until after the first OpenSQL statement in the current session has completed. If you switch sessions, the values in the SQLCA will apply to the previous session until an OpenSQL statement in the current session resets them. In contrast, the error information returned by `inquire_sql (errortext and errorno)` always apply to the current session.

When an application switches sessions within a select loop or other block statement, the SQLCA field values are updated to reflect the status of the statements executed inside the nested session. After the application switches back to the session with the loop, the SQLCA field values reflect the status of the last statement in the nested session. `Sqlcode` and `sqlwarn` are not updated until the statement immediately following the loop completes. (The information obtained by `inquire_sql` is not valid until the statement following a loop completes.) For this reason, the application should reset the `sqlcode` and `sqlwarn` fields before continuing the loop.

Multiple Sessions and the DBMS

Each session in a multiple-session application requires an independent connection to the EDBC products or DBMS server. When creating multiple-session applications, keep the following points in mind:

- In a multi-session application, an application can encounter deadlock against itself. For example, one session may attempt to update a table that was locked by another session.

- An application can also lock itself out in an undetectable manner. For example, if a table is updated in a transaction in one session and then selected from in another transaction in a second session, the second session waits indefinitely.

Multiple Session Examples

This section presents an example of multiple sessions.

This example illustrates session switching inside a select loop and the resetting of status fields. The main program processes sales orders and calls the subroutine, `new_customer`, for every new customer.

The main program:

```
...
exec sql include sqlca;
exec sql begin declare section;

/* Include output of DCLGEN for declaration
** of record order_rec
*/
exec sql include 'decls';
exec sql end declare section;
exec sql connect 'customers/ims' session 1;
exec sql connect 'sales/vsam' session 2;
...

exec sql select * into :order_rec from orders;
exec sql begin;
  if (order_rec.new_customer = 1) then
    call new_customer(order_rec);
  endif
  process order;
exec sql end;
...

exec sql disconnect;

exec sql set_sql(session = 1);
exec sql disconnect;
```

The subroutine, `new_customer`, from the select loop, containing the session switch:

```
subroutine new_customer(record order_rec)
begin;

exec sql set_sql(session = 1);
exec sql insert into accounts values (:order_rec);

process any errors;
exec sql set_sql(session = 2);

sqlca.sqlcode = 0;
sqlca.sqlwarn.sqlwarn0 = ' ';

end subroutine;
```

Database Procedures

A *database procedure* is a named routine that is stored in the host DBMS or linked to an ODBC product. The following sections describe how to create, declare, and execute database procedures.

Creating Database Procedures

Database procedures can be created using the following methods:

- **Database Procedures** – The ODBC server allows you to create database procedures using the create procedure statement.
- **Host DBMS Procedures** – ODBC products provide access to procedures located in the host DBMS. (These procedures are created and maintained in the host DBMS.) The procedure must be declared to the ODBC product by issuing the register procedure statement. For details regarding support of host DBMS procedures, refer to your ODBC product guide. For details about creating and managing the host DBMS procedures, refer to your host DBMS documentation.
- **ODBC Product Procedures** – ODBC products to host DBMSs that do not support database procedures provide an alternate mechanism for database procedures: object code modules for the routine are linked into the ODBC product executable program. These routines must be declared to the ODBC product by issuing the register procedure statement. For details on the creating and registering this kind of procedure, refer to your ODBC product guide.

Note: OpenSQL does not control the transaction behavior that occurs when executing a database procedure. Transaction behavior is determined by the host DBMS.

Registering Database Procedures

The register procedure statement defines the interface between an application and a database procedure when support for the create procedure statement is not available. Creation and maintenance of the database procedure is dependent on the host DBMS or ODBC product. The register procedure statement defines the procedure name, its parameters and their types, and the host DBMS or ODBC product information required to access the procedure.

The register procedure syntax is:

```
register procedure procedure_name
  [(parameter_definition {,parameter_definition})]
  as import
  [from from_source]
  [with with_clause]
```

The *procedure_name* specifies the procedure name to be used in the OpenSQL `execute procedure` or `remove procedure` statements. The `from` clause specifies host DBMS or ODBC product information required to identify the procedure being registered. Additional information may be required by an individual ODBC product and is specified using the optional `with` clause.

The *parameter_definition* is specified as:

```
parameter_name datatype [not|with null]
    [not default | [with] default [default_value]]
    [byref]
    [is host_info]
```

Parameters are nullable unless you specify `not null`. The *default_value* can be a numeric or character literal or one of the following constants: `null`, `user`, `current_date`, or `current_time`. If the default value is omitted, a system-generated default is assigned. If the default clause is omitted, default `null` is assumed.

The `byref` keyword specifies that the parameter is passed by reference, enabling the procedure to return a value in the parameter. The `byref` keyword must also be used in the `execute procedure` statement to obtain the returned value. The `is` clause specifies additional information about the parameter, as required by the host DBMS or ODBC product. The host information must be enclosed in single quotes.

To delete a procedure registration, use the `remove procedure` statement. After deleting the registration, the procedure cannot be executed (unless you register the procedure again).

The `remove procedure` syntax is:

```
remove procedure procedure_name
```

For details about using the `register procedure` or `remove procedure` statements, refer to your ODBC product guide.

Executing Database Procedures

To execute a database procedure, issue the `execute procedure` statement. For details, refer to the “OpenSQL Statements” chapter.

To ensure portability of your application code and consistency of the transactions in your application, observe the following guidelines for executing database procedures:

- Do not issue `commit` or `rollback` statements within a database procedure, because these statements or their equivalents may not be supported in all host database management systems.
- Issue a `commit` or `rollback` statement before and after executing a database procedure.

- If an error occurs while a database procedure is being executed, the current transaction may be rolled back by the host DBMS. While this is permitted by OpenSQL, it is not required. After executing a database procedure, your application should check for errors and, if necessary, roll back the transaction.

DBMS Extensions

OpenSQL statements work with all ODBC products and DBMS servers. However, the underlying DBMS typically supports additional SQL statements and extensions.

OpenSQL provides the following methods for issuing DBMS-specific statements from an OpenSQL application:

- **Direct execute immediate** - The direct execute immediate statement passes a statement to the underlying DBMS. OpenSQL does not attempt to process or translate the statement. The direct execute immediate statement can be used with any SQL statement that can be executed dynamically (statements that can be issued with a DBMS execute immediate). Statements that return rows (for example, select or fetch) cannot be issued. For details, refer to the “OpenSQL Statements” chapter.
- **ODBC product with clause** - Many ODBC products support with clauses, which provide the ability to access DBMS extensions to database connection and Data Definition Language (DDL) SQL statements. The ODBC product with clause is described in detail in the following section.

The With Clause

The ODBC product with clause enables DBMS-specific options to be specified in an OpenSQL statement. ODBC products and servers process only the options directed at them, and ignore the rest. Valid options depend on the specific ODBC product and DBMS. For information on valid with clause parameters, refer to your ODBC product guide. The DBMS or ODBC product is responsible for performing the specified action or translating the with clause to the syntax required by the underlying DBMS.

The following OpenSQL statements support the EDBC product with clause:

- Connect
- Create index
- Create table
- Create view
- Drop index
- Drop table
- Drop view

Syntax of the With Clause

The with clause must be specified using the following syntax:

```
with [db_id_]option_name [= option_value]
    {, [db_id_]option_name [= option_value]}
```

The with clause can contain options intended for different EDBC products. The following table describes the parameters of the with clause:

Parameter	Description										
<i>db_id_</i>	<p>Specifies the server class of the EDBC product for which the option is specified. The trailing underscore is required, and the <i>option_name</i> parameter must be appended with no intervening space.</p> <p>If this parameter is specified, only the specified EDBC product will process the option. If this parameter is omitted, all EDBC products or database management systems will attempt to process the option. EDBC products will ignore options they cannot process.</p> <p>Valid values for EDBC products are:</p> <table><tbody><tr><td>DB2_</td><td>DB2</td></tr><tr><td>IMS_</td><td>IMS</td></tr><tr><td>VSAM_</td><td>VSAM or CICS/VSAM</td></tr><tr><td>DCOM_</td><td>CA-Datacom</td></tr><tr><td>IDMS_</td><td>CA_IDMS</td></tr></tbody></table>	DB2_	DB2	IMS_	IMS	VSAM_	VSAM or CICS/VSAM	DCOM_	CA-Datacom	IDMS_	CA_IDMS
DB2_	DB2										
IMS_	IMS										
VSAM_	VSAM or CICS/VSAM										
DCOM_	CA-Datacom										
IDMS_	CA_IDMS										
<i>option_name</i>	<p>Name of the option. If this is an EDBC product-specific option, <i>option_name</i> must be preceded by the <i>db_id</i>. For details about product-specific options, refer to your EDBC product guide.</p>										

Parameter	Description
<i>option_value</i>	<p>Value (if required by the option). This value can be specified using a quoted or unquoted character string, numeric literal, or variable.</p> <p>All values must be specified using simple data formats, such as integers, numerics, names, or strings. If a complex value is required, it must be encoded in a quoted string.</p> <p>To specify a list of values, use a comma-separated list enclosed in parentheses. For example:</p> <pre>with myoption=(value1, value2, value3)</pre>

If an option is specified using a string variable, (for example with `:stringvar`), and no value is to be provided, the variable must contain the string, "NULL". The EDBC product will ignore the option.

Examples

1. Connect to a DB2 subsystem DB2T and set the default database for table creation to mydb.

```
connect 'mvs1::db2t/db2' with db2_ct_option = 'mydb';
```

An EDBC product for DB2 receiving the preceding connect request will issue the DB2 statements required to connect to the DB2T DB2 subsystem with the indicated default database.

2. Create a database table and specify DBMS-specific extensions for both DB2 and ALLBASE/SQL.

```
create table newtab (col1 integer, col2 integer not null)
with db2_ct_option = 'audit all', alb_type = private;
```


OpenSQL Statements

This chapter presents OpenSQL statements individually, describing the purpose, syntax, and use of each statement.

SQL Version

This chapter describes the version of OpenSQL indicated by the following values in the iidbcapabilities catalog:

CAP_CAPABILITIES	CAP_VALUE
OPEN/SQL_LEVEL	8050

For more information about OpenSQL standard catalogs, refer to the “OpenSQL Standard Catalogs” chapter.

SQL Statements Context

At the beginning of each statement description, you will see the following table:

SQL	ESQL
*	*

The columns in this table have the following meanings:

- An asterisk (*) under SQL indicates you can use the statement in an interactive session.
- An asterisk (*) under ESQL indicates that you can use the statement in embedded programs.

Extended Statements

If the iidbcapabilities catalog contains the following row:

CAP_CAPABILITIES	CAP_VALUE
SQL92_COMPLIANCE	ENTRY

These additional statements and features can be used:

- Grant
- Revoke
- Create schema
- Create table constraints and defaults enhancements

If these statements and extensions are not supported, the iidbcapabilities catalog contains the following row:

CAP_CAPABILITIES	CAP_VALUE
SQL92_COMPLIANCE	NONE

Begin Declare Section

SQL	ESQL
	*

Begins a program section that declares host language variables to embedded OpenSQL.

Syntax

```
exec sql begin declare section;
```

Description

The `begin declare` section statement signals the start of a declaration section that declares host language variables for use in embedded OpenSQL. (All variables used in embedded OpenSQL or forms statements must be declared.) A single program can have multiple declaration sections.

The statements that can appear inside a declaration section are:

- Legal host language variable declarations.
- An include statement that includes a file that contains host language variable declarations. (This must be an SQL include statement, not a host language include statement.)
- A declare table statement (normally generated by `dclgen` in an included file).

The `end declare` section statement marks the end of the declaration section.

For more information about declaring and using host language variables, refer to the Host Language Variables topic in your host language companion guide.

Example

The example below shows the typical structure of a declaration section.

```
exec sql begin declare section;
  buffer      character_string(2000);
  number      integer;
  precision   float;
exec sql end declare section;
```

Close

SQL	ESQL
	*

Closes an open cursor.

Syntax

```
exec sql close cursor_name
```

Description

The close statement closes an open cursor. The *cursor_name* must have been previously defined in your source file by a declare cursor statement. Once closed, the cursor cannot be used for further processing unless reopened with a second open statement. A commit, rollback, or disconnect statement closes all open cursors.

A string constant or host language variable can be used to specify the cursor name.

Permissions

This statement is available to all users.

Example

This example illustrates cursor processing from cursor declaration to closing.

```
exec sql declare c1 cursor for
  select ename, jobid
  from employee
  where jobid = 1000;
...
exec sql open c1;
loop until no more rows;
  exec sql fetch c1
  into :name, :jobid;
  print name, jobid;
end loop;
exec sql close c1;
```

Commit

SQL	ESQL
*	*

Commits the current transaction.

Syntax

[exec sql] commit [work]

Description

This statement terminates the current transaction. Once committed, the transaction cannot be aborted, and all changes it made become visible to all users through any statement that manipulates that data.

The optional key word `work` is included for compatibility with other versions of SQL.

Embedded Usage

In addition to committing the current transaction, an embedded commit statement also:

- Closes all open cursors
- Discards all statements prepared (with the prepare statement) during the current transaction

When a program issues the disconnect statement, an implicit commit is also issued. Any pending updates are submitted. To roll back pending updates before terminating the program, a rollback statement must be issued.

Permissions

This statement is available to all users.

Example

This embedded example issues two updates, each in its own transaction.

```
exec sql connect 'mvs1::personnel/db2';  
  
exec sql update employee set salary = salary * 1.1  
       where rating = 'Good';  
  
exec sql commit;  
  
exec sql update employee set salary = salary * 0.9  
       where rating = 'Bad';  
  
exec sql disconnect;  
/* Implicit commit issued on disconnect */
```

Connect

SQL	ESQL
	*

Connects the application to a database and, optionally, to a specified transaction.

Syntax

```
exec sql connect dbname
    [session session_identifier]
    [identified by username]
    [options = flag {, flag}]
    [with_clause]
```

The *with_clause* parameter consists of the word *with* followed by a comma-separated list of valid options. Refer to the *With Clause* topic for an overview of this parameter. For a list of the valid *with clause* options for a specific EDBC product, refer to your product guide.

Description

The embedded SQL *connect* statement connects an application to a database, similar to the operating-system-level *sql* command. The *connect* statement must precede all statements that access the database. The *connect* statement cannot be issued in a dynamic OpenSQL statement.

Use the *session* clause if your application includes multiple open sessions. The *session* clause uniquely identifies each session, by associating each session with the specified *session_identifier*. The session identifier must be a positive integer.

Multiple-session applications require the *session* clause on each *connect* statement including the first. If this clause is not present on the first *connect* in the application, OpenSQL assumes that the application does not use multiple open sessions, and subsequent attempts to open other sessions generate an error.

To switch from one existing session to another existing session, use the *set_sql* statement. The *connect* statement with the *session* clause is used only to establish new sessions. You can, however, open more than one session with the same database.

For a discussion of multiple sessions and examples of their use, refer to the *Multiple Session Connections* topic in the “OpenSQL Features” chapter.

The identified by clause allows the session to run as the specified user, like the `-u` flag of the `sql` command. To determine whether your ODBC product supports the `-u` flag (and, therefore, the identified by clause), refer to your product guide.

The options clause allows up to 12 flags to be specified that control session behavior. Not all options are supported by all ODBC products.

The with clause ODBC product-specific connection parameters to be specified. For an overview of the with clause, refer to the With Clause topic in the “OpenSQL Features” chapter. To determine the options supported by a specific ODBC product, refer to your product guide.

The following table lists valid parameters for this command:

Parameters	Description
<i>dbname</i>	Specifies the database to which the session will connect. Ddbname can be a quoted or unquoted string literal or a host string variable. If the name includes any name extensions, such as a virtual node name or server class, string literals must be quoted.
<i>server_class</i>	Specifies the product or type of server to which the session is connecting. Examples of ODBC server classes include: Server class codes (product) DB2: DB2 DCOM: CA-Datacom/DB IDMS: CA-IDMS IMS: IMS VSAM: VSAM or CICS/VSAM
<i>session_identifier</i>	A positive integer literal or variable whose value must be unique among existing session identifiers in the application. A value of 0 is equivalent to omitting the session clause.
<i>username</i>	Specifies the user identifier under which this session will run. Username can be a quoted or unquoted character string literal or string variable. Valid only if the ODBC product supports the identified by clause.

Parameters	Description
<i>flags</i>	Any flag that is accepted by the sql command and is not specific to the Terminal Monitor can be specified in the options clause. The flags can be expressed as quoted or unquoted character string literals or as string variables. Refer to your product guide for valid options.
<i>with_clause</i>	Specifies EDBC product-specific connection parameters. The command line +c flag provides access to the connect statement's with clause. For a discussion of the with clause, refer to DBMS Extensions in the "OpenSQL Feature" chapter.

Permissions

This statement is available to any user. Some EDBC products do not support the identified by clause. For details, refer to your product guide.

Examples

1. Connect to the DB2 DSNB subsystem on virtual node MVS2.


```
exec sql connect 'mvs2::dsnab/db2'
with db2_ct_option = 'audit all';
```
2. Connect to two databases: the Datacom/DBA default database, which is located in London, and the local IMS database called, sales, located in Paris. Set the current session to the personnel database.


```
exec sql connect 'london::dcom/dcom' session 1;
exec sql connect 'paris::sales/ims' session 2;
exec sql set_sql (session = 1);
```

Create Index

SQL	ESQL
*	*

Creates an index on an existing base table.

Syntax

```
[exec sql] create [unique] index indexname on tablename  
    (columnname {, columnname})  
    [with with_clause]
```

The *with_clause* parameter consists of a comma-separated list of valid EDBC product with clause options. For an overview of the with clause, refer to the “OpenSQL Features” chapter. For a list of the valid with clause options for a specific EDBC product, refer to your product guide.

Description

The create index statement creates an index on an existing base table. The index contains the columns specified and is keyed on those columns, in the order they are specified.

Indexes can improve query processing. If data is retrieved from a table based on an indexed column, the DBMS uses indexes, if available, to accelerate query processing. To obtain the greatest benefit, create indexes that contain all of the columns that are generally queried and keyed on some subset of those columns.

Any number of indexes can be created for a table, but, for portability, each index can contain no more than 16 columns.

To prevent the index from accepting duplicate values in key fields, specify the unique option. If the base table on which the index is being created has duplicate values for the index’s key fields, then the create index statement will fail. Similarly, if you attempt an insert or update that violates the uniqueness constraint of an index created on the table, then the insert or update will fail. This is true for an update statement that updates multiple rows: the update statement will fail as soon as it attempts to write a row that update violates the uniqueness constraint.

Particular EDBC products may support extensions to the create index statement (using the with clause). For a discussion of the with clause, refer to the “OpenSQL Features” chapter.

To ensure application portability, follow each create index statement with a commit statement.

An index cannot be updated directly. When a table is changed, the DBMS updates indexes as required. To destroy an index, use the drop statement. All indexes on a table are destroyed when the table is dropped.

The following table lists valid parameters for this statement.

Parameter	Description
<i>indexname</i>	Specifies the name of the index. This must be a valid object name.
<i>tablename</i>	Specifies the table on which the index is to be created.
<i>columnname</i> {, <i>columnname</i> }	A list of columns from the specified table to be included in the index.
<i>with_clause</i>	Specifies EDBC product-specific options. For details, refer to your product guide.

Embedded Usage

The preprocessor does not validate the syntax of the with clause.

Example

Create an index called, x, for the columns, ename and age, on employee table.

```
create index x on employee (ename, age);
```

Create Table

SQL	ESQL
*	*

Creates a new base table.

Syntax

```
[exec sql] create table tablename  
    (columnname format {, columnname format})  
    [with_clause]
```

To create a table and load from another table:

```
[exec sql] create table tablename
    [(columnname {, columnname})] as subselect {union [all] subselect}
    [with with_clause]
```

The *with_clause* parameter consists of a comma-separated list of valid EDBC product with clause options. For an overview of the with clause, refer to the “OpenSQL Features” chapter. For a list of the valid with clause options for a specific EDBC product, refer to the documentation for that product.

For the syntax of *subselect*, refer to Select (interactive) in this chapter. For details about ISO Entry SQL92 extensions to this statement, refer to the Create Table (extended) topic in the “Extended Statements” chapter.

Description

The create table statement creates a new base table owned by the user who issues the statement. If you use the create table...as syntax, then the table that you create is some subset of the columns and values in an existing table(s) defined by the *subselect*.

Tablename specifies the name of the new table. This must be a valid OpenSQL name. For the rules for naming database objects, refer to the Object Names topic in the “Overview of OpenSQL” chapter.

The as clause causes the table that you create to be defined and populated by the *subselect* specified in the statement.

To ensure application portability, follow every create table statement with a commit statement.

Embedded Usage

- Host variables can be used to specify constant expressions in the subselect of a create table...as statement.
- The preprocessor does not validate the syntax of the with_clause.

Specifying the Column Names, Data Types, and Lengths

The name and data type of each column in the new table are specified by the *columnname* and *format* arguments. If you specify create table...as select, the new table takes its column names and formats from the results of the select clause of the *subselect* in the as clause (unless you specify column names following the table name). For more information, refer to the Create Table topic in this chapter.

Columnname can be any valid OpenSQL name. *Format* specifies the data type and length of the column using the following syntax:

datatype [**not null** | **with null**]

Datatype can be any valid OpenSQL data type and length. For a discussion of valid data types and lengths, refer to the “OpenSQL Data Types” chapter.

The with | not null clause determines whether or not a column will accept null or default values, or neither, during an insert, update, or copy operation. The options for the with | not null clause are:

- **with null** - The column accepts nulls. The DBMS inserts null as the default value if no value is supplied by the user.
- **not null** - The column does not accept nulls, and the DBMS does not supply a default value. The user must supply a non-null value. (The column is mandatory.)

If the with | not null clause is omitted, with null is assumed.

Using the Create table...as Syntax

The create table...as syntax allows a table to be created from another table or tables. The new table is populated with the set of rows resulting from execution of the specified subselect.

When the create table statement includes an as clause, specifying column names is optional unless two or more columns of the table would otherwise have the same name. If that is the case, specify the column names.

The column format cannot be specified when using create table ...as; the formats are copied from the source table columns specified in the *subselect* clause. The nullability attribute of a column in the new table is the same as the corresponding column in the source table.

Examples

1. Create the employee table with columns eno, ename, age, job, salary, and dept.

```
create table employee
(eno      smallint,
 ename    varchar(20) not null,
 age      integer,
 job      smallint,
 salary   float,
 dept     smallint
 started date);
```

2. Create a table listing employee numbers for employees who make more than the average salary.

```
create table highincome as
select eno
from employee
where salary
(select avg (salary)
from employee);
```

Create View

SQL	ESQL
*	*

Defines a virtual table.

Syntax

```
[exec sql] create view view_name [(columnname {, columnname})]
as subselect {
union [all] subselect}
[with_clause]
```

The syntax of the *subselect* is described in the select statement description in this chapter.

The *with_clause* parameter consists of the word *with* followed by a comma-separated list of valid EDBC product with clause options (including, for this statement, *check option*). For an overview of the with clause, refer to the “OpenSQL Features” chapter. For a list of the valid with clause options for a specific EDBC product, refer to the product guide. The *check option* is not supported by all EDBC products. Products that do not support *check option* will ignore it when creating the specified view.

Description

The syntax of the create view statement is very similar to that of the *as* form of create table. However, data is not retrieved when a view is created. Instead, the view definition is stored and, when the *view_name* is later used in an SQL statement, the statement operates on the tables that are used to define the view. (The tables or views used to define a view are called its base tables.)

All selects on views are fully supported. Simply use a *view_name* in place of a *tablename* in any SQL retrieval. However, updates, inserts, and deletes on views are subject to several rules:

- Updates, inserts, and deletes are not allowed if:
 - The view was created from more than one table
 - The view was created from a non-updateable view
 - Any columns in the view are derived from an expression or aggregate (set) function
- Additionally, inserts are not allowed if:
 - The view definition contains a where clause and specifies the with check option (if supported by the EDBC product)
 - If any column in the underlying table that was declared as not null not default is not present in the view
- The ability to update a view depends in part on whether the with check option is specified.

When a view is created with check option, columns that are part of the view's qualification cannot be updated.

If the with check option is not specified, any row in the view can be updated, even if the update results in a row that is no longer a part of the view.

For example, consider the following two statements:

```
create view v
as select *
from t
where c = 10;
update v
set c = 5;
```

Because the with check option is not specified in the view's definition, you are allowed to update column c. If the view had been created with check option, the update would not be allowed.

By default, with check option is not set.

When a table used in the definition of a view is dropped, the view is also dropped.

Note: Particular EDBC products may support extensions to the create view statement, using the with clause.

To ensure application portability, follow every create view statement with a commit statement.

Embedded Usage

When used in an embedded program, constant expressions can be specified in the *select_stmt* with host language string variables. If the *select_stmt* includes a where clause, a host language string variable can be used to represent the entire where clause qualification.

Example

Define a view of employee data including names, salaries, and managers' names.

```
create view empdpt (ename, sal, dname)
as select employee.name, employee.salary,
    dept.name
from employee, dept
where employee.mgr = dept.mgr;
```

Declare Cursor

SQL	ESQL
	*

Declares a cursor for use in data manipulation.

Syntax

```
exec sql declare cursor_name cursor
for select [all | distinct]
    result_expression {, result_expression}
from table {, table}
[where search_condition]
[group by column {, column}]
[having search_condition]
[union [all] full_select]
[order by result_column [asc | desc]
    {, result_column [asc | desc]}]
[for update of column {, column}]
```

Dynamic SQL form:

```
exec sql declare cursor_name cursor
for statement_name;
```

Description

The declare cursor statement associates a specified cursor with a select statement. For information about using the select statement with cursors, refer to Cursor Select in this chapter.

Declare cursor is a compile-time statement and must appear before the first statement that references the cursor. Despite its declarative nature, a declare cursor statement must not be located in a host language variable declaration section.

Cursor_name can be specified using a quoted or unquoted string literal or a host language string variable. If *cursor_name* is a reserved word, it must be specified in quotes. *Cursor_name* can contain a maximum of 24 alphanumeric characters.

The typical order of events in cursor processing is:

1. Issue a declare cursor statement to associate a cursor with a select statement.
2. Open the cursor. When the cursor is opened, the DBMS executes the select statement that was specified in the declare cursor statement.
3. Process rows one at a time. The fetch statement returns one row from the results of the select statement that was executed when the cursor was opened.
4. Close the cursor by issuing the close statement.

A source file can have multiple cursors, but the same cursor cannot be declared twice. If you want to declare several cursors using the same host language variable to represent *cursor_name*, it is only necessary to declare the cursor once, since declare cursor is a compile-time statement. Multiple declarations of the same *cursor_name* will cause a preprocessor error, even if its actual value is to be changed between declarations. For example, the following statements cause a preprocessor error:

```
exec sql declare :cname[i] cursor for s1;
i = i + 1
/* The following statement causes preprocessor error */
exec sql declare :cname[i] cursor for s2;
```

Instead, declare the cursor once. The value assigned to the host language variable *cursor_name* is not determined until the open cursor statement is executed. For example:

```
exec sql declare :cname[i] cursor for :sname[i];
loop incrementing i
exec sql open :cname[i];
end loop;
```

If a cursor is declared using a host language variable, all subsequent references to that cursor must use the same host language variable. At run-time, a dynamically specified cursor name, that is, a cursor declared using a variable, must be unique among all dynamically specified cursor names in an application. In a similar manner, any cursors referenced in a dynamic statement, for example a dynamic update or delete cursor statement, must be unique among all open cursors within the current transaction.

A cursor name declared in one source file cannot be referred to in another file, since the scope of a cursor declaration is the source file. If the cursor is redeclared in another file with the same associated query, it will *still* not identify the same cursor, not even at run time. For example, if a cursor `c1` is declared in source file, `file1`, then all references to `c1` must be made within `file1`. Failure to follow this rule results in run-time errors. For example, if you declare cursor `c1` in an include file, open it in one file and fetch from it in another file, at run time the DBMS returns an error indicating that the cursor `c1` is not open on the fetch.

This rule applies equally to dynamically specified cursor names. If a dynamic update or delete cursor statement is executed, the cursor referenced in the statement must be declared in the same file in which the update or delete statement appears.

The embedded SQL preprocessor does not generate any code for the declare cursor statement. Therefore, in a language that does not allow empty control blocks, (for example, COBOL, which does not allow empty IF blocks), the declare cursor statement should not be the only statement in the block.

The `for update` clause must be included if there is any possibility that the cursor will be used to update rows. List any column that might be updated. If you only intend to delete rows, then the `for update` clause is not required. The actual updating or deleting takes place with the cursor version of the update or delete statement, respectively (refer to the sections on Update and Delete below).

A cursor cannot be declared for updating if its select statement:

- Refers to more than one table.

For example, the following cursor declaration causes a compile-time error:

```
exec sql declare c1 cursor for
select employee.id, accounts.sal
from employee, accounts
where employee.salno = accounts.accno
for update of sal;
/* illegal join on different tables for
update */
```

This declaration is illegal because two tables were used in the select statement.

- Refers to a non-updateable view.

For example, assume that empdept is a read-only view, not a table, then the following example generates a run-time error at the time the open statement is executed. No preprocessor error is generated, because the preprocessor does not know that empdept is a view.

```
exec sql declare c2 cursor for
  select name, deptinfo
  from empdept /* empdept is a read-only view */
  for update of deptinfo;
```

...

```
exec sql open c2;
```

- Includes a distinct, group by, having, order by, or union clause.

It is also illegal to update a column that is a constant or is based on a calculation. For example, the following cursor declaration generates an error when you attempt to update the column named constant:

```
exec sql declare c3 cursor for
  select 123 as constant, ename
  from employee
  for update of constant;
  /* "constant" cannot be declared for update */
```

If an updateable column has been given a result column name by using the syntax:

columnname as resultname

then the column referred to in the for update list must name the table column name, and not the result column name.

Updates associated with a cursor take effect on the underlying table when the statement is executed. The effects of the updates can be seen by the program before the cursor is closed. The actual committal of the changes does not override or interfere with commit or rollback statements that may be executed subsequently in the program. Because changes take effect immediately, avoid updating keys that cause the current row to move “forward” with respect to the current position of the cursor, because this may result in fetching the same row more than once.

If the for update clause is specified, the cursor can still be opened for reading only. The open statement accepts the optional for readonly clause, which specifies that, though the cursor may have been declared for update, the cursor is not being opened for update. By including this clause in the open statement, the performance of the cursor retrieval can be improved.

Not all database management systems allow the use of a cursor to update a row more than once. For details, refer to your EDBC product and DBMS-specific documentation.

The union form of the select statement can be used in a cursor declaration. To select all columns, use select *. Each column does not need to be listed individually.

When the order by clause is specified, the ordering is performed according to SQL comparison rules. Each column specified in the ordering must specify either a column name, which identifies a column of the result table, or an integer, which identifies a numbered column of the result table. A named result column can be identified by an ordering name or a number. An unnamed result column must be identified by an ordering number.

Host language variables can be used in the select statement of a declare cursor to substitute for expressions in the select clause or in the search condition (refer to the section on Select). When the search condition is specified within a single string variable (as when the query is constructed using the form system query mode) then all the following clauses, such as the order by or update clause, can be included within the variable. These variables must be valid at the time of the cursor's open statement, because that is when the select is actually evaluated—they need not have defined values at the time of the declare cursor statement. Host language variables cannot substitute for any table or column names.

You can also use the dynamic OpenSQL syntax and specify a prepared statement name instead of a select statement. The statement name must identify a select statement that has been prepared previously. The statement name must not be the same as another prepared statement name that is associated with a currently open cursor.

Examples

1. Declare a cursor for a retrieval of employees from the shoe department, ordered by name (ascending) and salary (descending). (This could also be specified as a select loop.)

```
exec sql declare cursor1 cursor for
  select ename, sal
  from employee
  where dept = 'shoes'
  order by 1 asc, 2 desc;
```

2. Declare a cursor for updating the salaries and departments of employees currently in the shoe department.

```
exec sql declare cursor2 cursor for
  select ename, sal
  from employee
  where dept = 'shoes'
  for update of sal, dept;
```

3. Declare a cursor for updating the salaries of employees whose last names are alphabetically like a given pattern.

```
searchpattern = 'a%';
exec sql declare cursor3 cursor for
  select ename, sal
  from employee
  where ename like :searchpattern
  for update of sal;

...

exec sql open cursor3;
```

In the above example, the variable, `searchpattern`, must be a valid declaration in the host language at the time the statement, `open cursor3`, is executed. It also must be a valid embedded OpenSQL declaration at the point where the cursor is declared.

4. Declare a cursor in order to print the results of a retrieval for run-time viewing and salary changes.

```
exec sql declare cursor4 cursor for
  select ename, age, eno, sal
  from employee
  for update of sal;

exec sql whenever sqlerror stop;
exec sql whenever not found goto close_cursor;
exec sql open cursor4;

loop /* loop is broken when NOT FOUND becomes
      true. */
  exec sql fetch cursor4
    into :name, :age, :idno, :salary;
  print name, age, idno, salary;
  print 'New salary';
  read newsal;
  if (newsal > 0 and newsal <> salary) then
    exec sql update employee
      set sal = :newsal
      where current of cursor4;
  end if;
end loop;

close_cursor:
exec sql close cursor4;
```

5. Declare a cursor for retrieval of specific data. The `for update` clause refers to column name `sal` and not `res`.

```
exec sql declare cursor5 cursor for
  select ename, sal as res
  from employee
  where eno between :eno_low and :eno_high
  for update of sal;

. . .

loop while more input
  read eno_low, eno_high;
  exec sql open cursor5;
  print and process rows;
end loop;
```

6. Declare two cursors for the department and employee tables and open them in a master-detail fashion.

```

exec sql declare master_cursor cursor for
  select * from dept
  order by dno;

exec sql declare detail_cursor cursor for
  select * from employee
  where edept = :dno
  order by ename;

exec sql open master_cursor;
  loop while more departments
exec sql fetch master_cursor
  into :dname, :dno, :dfloor, :dsales;

  if not found break loop;
/*
** For each department retrieve all the employees
** and display the department and employee data.
*/

exec sql open detail_cursor;
  loop while more employees
exec sql fetch detail_cursor
  into :name, :age, :idno, :salary, :edept;

/*
** For each department retrieve all the employees
** and display the department and employee data.
*/

  process and display data;
end loop;
exec sql close detail_cursor;
end loop;
exec sql close master_cursor;

```

7. Declare a cursor that is a union of three tables with identical typed columns (the columns have different names). As each row returns, record the information and add it to a new table. Ignore all errors.

```

exec sql declare shapes cursor for
  select boxname, boxnum from boxes
  where boxid > 100
  union
  select toolname, toolnum from tools
  union
  select nailname, nailnum from nails
  where nailweight > 4;

exec sql open shapes;
exec sql whenever not found goto done;

  loop while more shapes

    exec sql fetch shapes into :name, :number;
    record name and number;
    exec sql insert into hardware (:name, :number);

  end loop;
done:

exec sql close shapes;

```

Declare Statement

SQL	ESQL
	*

Declares names to identify one or more dynamic OpenSQL prepared statement names.

Syntax

```
exec sql declare statement_name {, statement_name} statement
```

Description

Declare statement lists one or more names that are used in a program to identify prepared OpenSQL statements. Declare statement is provided for purposes of program documentation. The declaration of prepared statement names is not required. No syntactic elements can be specified using host language variables.

The embedded SQL preprocessor does not generate any code for declare statement. Therefore, in a language that does not allow empty control blocks (for example, COBOL, which does not allow empty IF blocks), this statement must not be the only statement in the block.

Example

This example declares one statement name for a dynamic statement that will be executed 10 times.

```
exec sql declare ten_times statement;  
  
loop while more input  
print 'Type in statement to be executed 10 times?';  
read statement_buffer;  
  
exec sql prepare ten_times from :statement_buffer;  
loop 10 times  
    exec sql execute ten_times;  
end loop;  
end loop;
```

Declare Table

SQL	ESQL
	*

Describes the structure of a database table.

Syntax

```
exec sql declare tablename table
    (columnname type [with null | not null]
    {, columnname type})
```

Description

The declare table statement is a comment statement inside a variable declaration section that lists the columns and data types of a table, for the purpose of program documentation. The dclgen utility includes this statement in the file it generates. Dclgen creates a structure corresponding to a database table. For details, refer to your host language companion guide.

Any elements of the syntax cannot be replaced with host language variables.

The embedded SQL preprocessor does not generate any code for the declare table statement. Therefore, in a language that does not allow empty control blocks (for example, COBOL, which does not allow empty IF blocks), the declare table statement must not be the only statement in the block.

Example

Declare a database table.

```
exec sql declare employee table
    (eno integer2 not null,
    ename character(20) not null,
    age integer,
    job integer2,
    sal float,
    dept integer2 not null);
```

Delete

SQL	ESQL
*	*

Deletes rows from a table.

Syntax

Interactive version:

```
delete from tablename [where search_condition]
```

Embedded versions:

Non-cursor version:

```
exec sql [repeated] delete from tablename  
  [where search_condition]
```

Cursor version:

```
exec sql delete from tablename  
  where current of cursor_name;
```

Description

The delete statement removes rows from the specified table that satisfy the *search_condition* in the where clause. If the where clause is omitted, the statement deletes all rows in the table. The result is a valid but empty table.

If the where clause includes a subselect, the tables specified in the subselect cannot include the table from which you are deleting rows.

Embedded Usage

There are two embedded versions of the delete statement: one deletes rows according to the search criteria specified in its where clause, and the second deletes the row to which the specified cursor is positioned.

Non-cursor Delete

The non-cursor version of the embedded OpenSQL delete statement is virtually identical to the interactive delete. Host language variables can be used to represent constant expressions in the *search_condition* but they cannot represent names of database columns or include any operators. A host string variable can also replace the complete search condition.

The non-cursor delete can be formulated as a repeated query by using the key word repeated. Doing so reduces the overhead required to run the same delete repeatedly within your program. The repeated key word directs the OpenSQL to encode the delete and save its execution plan when it is first executed. This encoding can account for significant performance improvements on subsequent executions of the same delete. The repeated key word is valid only for non-cursor deletes, and it is ignored if used with the cursor version. The repeated delete cannot be specified using a dynamic OpenSQL statement.

If the *search_condition* is dynamically constructed, that is, if the complete clause is specified in a host string variable, do not use the repeated option if you intend to change the *search_condition* after the statement's initial execution. The saved execution plan is based on the initial values in the *search_condition* and any changes would be ignored. This rule does not apply to simple variables used in *search_conditions*.

Cursor Delete

The cursor version immediately deletes the row to which the specified cursor is pointing. If the cursor is not currently pointing at a row when the delete is executed, then the DBMS generates an error indicating the need to issue a fetch statement to position the cursor on a row. (After a deletion, the cursor points to a position after the deleted row, but before the next row, if any.)

The commit and rollback statements close all open cursors. A common programming error is to delete the current row of a cursor, commit the change, then loop to repeat the process. This process fails because the first commit closes the cursor.

In performing a cursor delete, certain conditions must be met:

- A cursor must be declared in the same file in which any delete statements referencing that cursor appear. This applies also to any cursors referenced in dynamic delete statement strings.
- A cursor name in a dynamic delete statement must be unique among all open cursors in the current transaction.
- The cursor stipulated in the delete must be open before the statement is executed.

- The cursor's select statement must not contain a distinct, group by, having, order by, or union clause.
- The from clause of the delete and the from clause in the cursor's declaration must refer to the same database table.

The cursor name can be specified with a string constant or a host language variable.

If the statement does not delete any rows, the sqlcode variable in the SQLCA structure is set to 100.

The sqlerrd(3) variable in the SQLCA structure contains the number of rows deleted.

Example

Remove all employees who make over \$35,000.

```
delete from employee where salary >35000;
```

Describe

SQL	ESQL
	*

Retrieves information about a prepared dynamic OpenSQL statement.

Syntax

```
exec sql describe statement_name  
into | using descriptor_name [using names]
```

Description

The describe statement returns information about a prepared dynamic OpenSQL statement. Describe is intended primarily for use with dynamic select statements. Describe returns the data type, length, and name of the select's result columns. If the prepared statement is not a select, describe returns a zero to the SQLDA sqlc field. For a complete discussion of the SQLDA (SQL Descriptor Area), refer to the "Dynamic OpenSQL" chapter.

The *statement_name* can be specified as either a string literal or using a host language string variable. In either case, *statement_name* must identify a valid prepared statement. (An invalid prepared statement results whenever an error occurs when the specified statement is prepared or if a commit or rollback statement is executed after the statement is prepared and before it is executed.)

Descriptor_name identifies an SQLDA (SQL Descriptor Area). The actual name can be "SQLDA" or any other valid OpenSQL name defined by the program when the structure is allocated. Because the SQLDA is not declared in a declaration section, the preprocessor does not verify that *descriptor_name* represents an SQLDA structure. If *descriptor_name* does not represent an SQLDA structure, undefined errors will occur at run time. *Descriptor_name* can be preceded by a colon (:).

The optional using names clause directs the OpenSQL EDBC product or server to return the names of result columns in the descriptor if the described statement is a select statement.

The describe statement cannot be issued until after the program allocates the SQLDA and sets the value of the SQLDA sqln field to the number of elements in the SQLDA sqlvar array. The results of the describe statement are complete and valid only if the number of the result columns (from the select) is less than or equal to the number of allocated sqlvar elements. For more information about describing a select statement and analyzing the results, refer to the "Dynamic OpenSQL" chapter.

The prepare statement can also be used with the into clause to retrieve the same descriptive information provided by describe.

Direct Execute Immediate

SQL	ESQL
	*

Sends DBMS-specific commands to the DBMS without translation.

Syntax

```
exec sql direct execute immediate string | string_variable
```

Description

The direct execute immediate statement allows statements to be sent to the EDBC product or DBMS to which a session is connected. The EDBC product does not translate the statement. If the statement is not supported by the DBMS or EDBC product, an error is returned. The direct execute immediate statement cannot be used to return rows to a session.

A host language variable or string literal can be used to specify the statement. If you use a string literal, avoid embedding quotes in the literal. If you specify the statement using a host language variable, the OpenSQL string-delimiting conventions must be observed.

Disconnect

SQL	ESQL
	*

Terminates access to the database.

Syntax

```
exec sql disconnect [session session_identifier | all]
```

Description

The disconnect statement terminates access to the database, closes any open cursors, and commits any open transactions.

To disconnect the current session, issue the disconnect statement, omitting the session identifier. Other sessions (if any) will remain connected. To switch sessions, use the `set_sql` statement. To disconnect all open sessions, specify `disconnect all`.

To disconnect a specific session in a multi-session application, use the session *session_identifier* clause to identify the session you want to disconnect. The *session_identifier* must be a positive integer constant or variable containing the session identifier. To determine the *session_identifier* for the current session, use the `inquire_sql(:session_id = session)` statement. If an invalid session is specified, OpenSQL issues an error and does not disconnect the session.

Examples

1. Disconnect from the current database.


```
exec sql disconnect;
```
2. On an error, roll back pending updates, then disconnect the database session.


```
exec sql whenever sqlerror goto err;
...
err:
  exec sql rollback;
  exec sql disconnect;
```

Drop

SQL	ESQL
*	*

Destroys one or more tables, indexes, or views.

Syntax

```
[exec sql] drop table tablename [with with_clause]
[exec sql] drop index indexname [with with_clause]
[exec sql] drop view viewname [with with_clause]
```

The *with_clause* parameter consists of a comma-separated list of valid EDBC product with clause options. For an overview of the with clause, refer to the “OpenSQL Features” chapter. For a list of the valid with clause options for a specific EDBC product, refer to the product guide.

Description

The drop statement removes the specified tables, indexes, and views from the database. When a table is dropped, any indexes, views, or privileges defined on that table are automatically dropped also. When a view is dropped, all associated privileges and dependent views are dropped.

To ensure application portability, follow every drop statement with a commit statement.

Embedded Usage

You cannot replace any portions of the statement with host language variables.

Examples

1. Drop an index named, tindex.

```
drop index tindex;  
commit;
```

2. Drop a base table and all related views, indexes, and permissions.

```
drop table employee;  
commit;
```

3. In an embedded program, drop a view.

```
exec sql drop view tempview;  
exec sql commit;
```

End Declare Section

SQL	ESQL
	*

Ends declaration of host language variables.

Syntax

```
exec sql end declare section
```

Description

The end declare section statement marks the end of a host language variable declaration section.

A host language variable declaration section contains declarations of host language variables for use in an embedded OpenSQL program. The begin declare section statement starts each variable declaration section. For more information about declaration sections and host language variables, refer to the Begin Declare Section statement description and to the “Embedded OpenSQL” chapter.

Endselect

SQL	ESQL
	*

Terminates a select loop.

Syntax

```
exec sql endselect;
```

Description

The endselect statement terminates embedded OpenSQL select loops. A select loop is a block of code delimited by begin and end statements and associated with a select statement. As the select statement retrieves rows from the database, each row is processed by the code in the select loop. (For more information about select loops, refer to the Select statement description.) When the endselect statement is executed, the program stops retrieving rows from the database and program control is transferred to the first statement following the select loop.

The endselect statement must be inside the select loop that it is intended to terminate. If an endselect statement is placed inside a forms statement code block that is syntactically nested within a select loop, the statement ends the nested construct as well as the select loop.

The statement must be terminated according to the rules of the host language.

To find out how many rows were retrieved before the `endselect` statement was issued, check the `sqlerrd(3)` variable of the SQLCA.

Example

Break out of a select loop on a data loading error.

```
exec sql select ename, eno into :ename, :eno
      from employee;
exec sql begin;
      load ename, eno into data set;
      if error then
          print 'Error loading ', ename, eno;
          exec sql endselect;
      end if
exec sql end;
/* endselect transfers control to here */
```

Execute

SQL	ESQL
	*

Executes a previously prepared dynamic OpenSQL statement.

Syntax

```
exec sql execute statement_name
      [using variable {, variable} |
      using descriptor descriptor_name]
```

Description

The `execute` statement executes the prepared OpenSQL statement specified by *statement_name*. `Execute` can be used to execute any statement that can be prepared, with the exception of the `select` statement. (The `execute` statement cannot be used to execute a prepared `select` statement. For more information, refer to the `Prepare and Execute Statements` topic in the “Dynamic OpenSQL” chapter, and to the `Execute Immediate` statement description in this chapter.)

The *statement_name* can be specified using a string literal or a host language variable. *Statement_name* must identify a valid prepared statement. If the statement identified by *statement_name* is invalid, the EDBC product or server issues an error and aborts the execute statement. (A prepared statement is invalid if a transaction was committed or rolled back after the statement was prepared or if an error occurred while preparing the statement.)

If the prepared statement refers to a cursor update or delete and the associated cursor is not open, the EDBC product or server issues an error. For more information, refer to the Update and Delete statement descriptions.

If the prepared statement uses a question mark (?) to specify one or more constant expressions, the using clause must be specified in the statement. If you know the number and data types of the expressions specified by question marks in the prepared statement, use the using *variable* {, *variable*} option. The number of the variables listed must correspond to the number of question marks in the prepared statement, and each variable's data type must be compatible with its usage in the prepared statement.

The following example prepares a statement containing one question mark from a buffer and executes it using a host language variable:

```
statement_buffer =  
'delete from ' + table_name + ' where code = ?';  
exec sql prepare del_stmt from :statement_buffer;  
...  
  
exec sql execute del_stmt using :code;
```

The value in the variable, *code*, replaces the ? in the where clause of the prepared delete statement.

If the number and data types of the prepared statement parameters are not known until run time, use the using descriptor option. In this alternative, the *descriptor_name* identifies an SQLDA, a host language structure that must be allocated prior to its use. The SQLDA includes the sqlvar array. Each element of sqlvar is used to describe and point to a host language variable. The execute statement uses the values placed in the variables pointed to by the sqlvar elements to execute the prepared statement.

When the SQLDA is used for input, the program must set the sqlvar array element type, length, and data area for each portion of the prepared statement specified by question marks, prior to executing the statement.

Here are some of the ways the program can supply that information:

- When preparing the statement, the program can request all type and length information from the interactive user.

- Before preparing the statement, the program can scan the statement string, and build a select statement out of the clauses that include parameters. The program can then prepare and describe this select statement in order to collect data type information to be used on input.
- If another application development tool is being used to build the dynamic statements (such as a Vision frame or a VIFRED form), the data type information included in those objects can be used to build the descriptor. An example of this method is shown in the Examples section.

In addition, the program must also correctly set the `sqlid` field in the `SQLDA` structure. For a complete description of the structure of the `SQLDA` and how to use it, refer to the “Dynamic OpenSQL” chapter.

The variables used by the `using` clause can be associated with indicator variables if indicator variables are permitted with the same statement in the non-dynamic case. For example, because indicator variables are permitted in the `insert` statement values clause, then the following dynamically defined `insert` statement can include indicator variables (`name_ind` and `age_ind`) in the `execute` statement:

```
statement_buffer = 'insert into employee (name, age)    values (?, ?)';
exec sql prepare s1 from :statement_buffer;
exec sql execute s1 using :name:name_ind,
                        :age:age_ind;
```

However, a host structure variable cannot be used in the `using` clause, even if the named statement refers to a statement which allows a host structure variable when issued non-dynamically.

This statement must be terminated according to the rules of the host language.

Examples

1. Although the `commit` statement can be prepared, once the statement is executed, the prepared statement becomes invalid. For example, the following code will cause an error on the second `execute` statement:

```
statement_buffer = 'commit';
exec sql prepare s1 from :statement_buffer;

process and update data;
exec sql execute s1; /* Once committed, 's1' is
                    lost */

process and update more data;
exec sql execute s1;
/* 's1' is NOT a valid statement name */
```

2. When leaving an application, each user deletes all their rows from a working table. User rows are identified by their different access codes. One user may have more than one access code.

```

read group_id from terminal;
statement_buffer = 'delete from ' + group_id + '
where access_code = ?';

exec sql prepare s2 from :statement_buffer;

read access_code from terminal;
loop while (access_code <> 0)

    exec sql execute s2 using :access_code;
    read access_code from terminal;

end loop;
exec sql commit;

```

Execute Immediate

SQL	ESQL
	*

Executes an SQL statement specified as a string literal or in a host language variable.

Syntax

```

exec sql execute immediate statement_string
    [into variable {, variable} | using [descriptor]
    descriptor_name
    [exec sql begin;
    program_code
    exec sql end;]

```

Description

The execute immediate statement executes a dynamically built statement string. Unlike the prepare and execute sequence, this statement does not name or encode the statement and cannot supply parameters. The execute immediate statement is equivalent to:

```

exec sql prepare statement_name from
    :statement_buffer;
exec sql execute statement_name;
'Forget' the statement_name;

```

Execute immediate can be used:

- To execute a dynamic statement once in your program
- To execute a dynamic select statement and process the result rows with a select loop

If you intend to execute the statement string repeatedly and it is not a select statement, use the prepare and execute statements instead. For more information about the alternatives available for executing dynamic statements, refer to the “Dynamic OpenSQL” chapter. If the statement string is blank or empty, OpenSQL returns a run-time syntax error.

The execute immediate statement must be terminated according to the rules of the host language.

The following OpenSQL statements cannot be executed using execute immediate:

call	fetch
close	help
connect	include
declare	inquire_sql
describe	open
direct execute immediate	prepare
disconnect	set
endselect	set_sql
execute	whenever

The statement string must not include `exec sql`, any host language terminators, or references to variable names. If your statement string includes embedded quotes, it is easiest to specify the string in a host language variable. If you choose to specify a string that includes quotes as a string constant, remember that quoted characters *within* the statement string must follow the OpenSQL string delimiting rules. Even if your host language delimits strings with double quotes, the quoted characters within the statement string must be delimited by single quotes. For complete information about embedding quotes within a string literal, refer to your host language companion guide.

If the statement string is a cursor update or cursor delete, the declaration of the named cursor must appear in the same file as the execute immediate statement executing the statement string.

The `into` or `using` clause can only be used when the statement string is a select statement.

The `into` clause specifies variables to store the values returned by a `select`. This option can be used if the program knows the data types and lengths of the result columns before the `select` executes. The *variables* must be type compatible with the associated result columns. For information about the compatibility of host language variables and OpenSQL data types, refer to your host language companion guide.

Include the `using` clause if the program does not know the types and lengths of the result columns until run time. The `using` clause specifies an SQL Descriptor Area (SQLDA), a host language structure having, among other fields, an array of `sqlvar` elements. Each `sqlvar` element describes and points to a host language variable. When the `using` clause is specified, OpenSQL places the result column values in the variables pointed at by the `sqlvar` elements.

If you intend to use the `using` clause, the program can first prepare and describe the `select` statement. This process returns data type, name, and length information about the result columns to the SQLDA. Your program can then use that information to allocate the necessary variables before executing the `select`. For more information and about executing dynamic `select` statements and some examples of executing a dynamic `select`, refer to the “Dynamic OpenSQL” chapter.

If the `select` statement will return more than one row, include the `begin/end` statement block. This block defines a `select` loop. OpenSQL processes each row that the `select` returns using the program code that you supply in the `select` loop. The program code inside the loop must not include any other database statements, except the `endselect` statement. If the `select` returns multiple rows and you do not supply a `select` loop, the application receives only the first row and an error to indicate that others were returned but unseen.

Example

This example reads an SQL statement from the terminal into a host string variable, `statement_buffer`. If the user enters `quit`, the program ends. If an error occurs, the program informs the user.

```
exec sql include sqlca;

read statement_buffer from terminal;
loop while (statement_buffer <> 'QUIT')
```

```

exec sql execute immediate :statement_buffer;
  if (sqlcode = 0) then
    exec sql commit;
  else if (sqlcode = 100) then
    print 'No qualifying rows for statement: ';
    print statement_buffer;
  else
    print 'Error  :', sqlcode;
    print 'Statement :', statement_buffer;
  end if;

  read statement_buffer from terminal;
end loop;

```

Execute Procedure

SQL	ESQL
*	*

Invokes a database procedure.

Syntax

Non-dynamic version:

```

[exec sql] execute procedure [schema.]proc_name
  [(param_name=param_spec {, param_name=param_spec})]
  [into return_status]

```

where *param_spec* is a literal value, a host variable containing the value to be passed (*:hostvar*), or a host variable passed by reference (**byref**(*:host_variable*)).

Dynamic version:

```

[exec sql] execute procedure [schema.]proc_name
  [using [descriptor] descriptor_name]
  [into return_status]

```

Description

The execute procedure statement executes the database procedure identified by *proc_name*. *Proc_name* can be specified using a literal or a host string variable. Database procedures can be executed from interactive SQL (the Terminal Monitor), an embedded OpenSQL program, or from another database procedure. For details about database procedures, refer to the “OpenSQL Features” chapter.

This statement can be executed dynamically or non-dynamically. When executing a database procedure, you generally provide values for the formal parameters specified in the procedure's definition.

Passing Parameters - Non-Dynamic Version

In the non-dynamic version, parameters can be passed by value or by reference. Each *param_name* must match one of the parameter names in the parameter list of the procedure's definition. *Param_name* must be a valid identifier specified using a quoted or unquoted string or a host variable.

Data can be passed to a database procedure by:

- **Value** - To pass a parameter by value, specify `param_name =value`. When passing parameters by value, the database procedure receives a copy of the value.

Values can be specified using:

- Numeric or string literals
- OpenSQL constants (such as `today` or `user`)
- Host variables
- Arithmetic expressions

The *value* assigned to a *param_name* must be compatible in type with the formal parameter represented by *param_name*. You can specify date data using quoted character string values. If the data types are not compatible, OpenSQL issues an error and does not execute the procedure.

- **Reference** - To pass a parameter by reference, specify the parameter as `param_name = byref(:host_variable)`. When passing parameters by reference, the database procedure can change the contents of the variable. Any changes made by the database procedure are visible to the calling program. You cannot pass parameters by reference in interactive SQL.

Passing Parameters - Dynamic Version

In the dynamic version, the *descriptor_name* specified in the using clause identifies an SQL Descriptor Area (SQLDA), a host language structure allocated at run time. Prior to issuing the execute procedure statement, the program must place the parameter names in the `sqlname` fields of the SQLDA's `sqlvar` elements and the values assigned to the parameters must be placed in the host variables pointed to by the `sqldata` fields. When the statement is executed, the using clause directs OpenSQL to use those parameter names and values.

Parameter names and values follow the same rules for use and behavior when specified dynamically as those specified non-dynamically. For example, because positional referencing is not allowed when you issue the statement non-dynamically, when you use the dynamic version, any sqlvar element representing a parameter must have entries for both its sqlname and sqldata fields. The names must match those in the procedure's definition and the data types of the values must be compatible with the parameter to which they are assigned.

OpenSQL assigns a null or a default value to any parameter in the procedure's definition that is not assigned an explicit value when the procedure is executed. If the parameter is not nullable and does not have a default, an error is issued.

For example, for the create statement:

```
create procedure p (i integer not null,  
d date, c varchar(100)) as ...
```

the following associated execute statement implicitly assigns a null to parameter *d*.

```
exec sql execute procedure p (i = 123,  
c = 'String');
```

When executing a procedure dynamically, set the SQLDA sqldata field to the number of parameters that you are passing to the procedure. The sqldata value tells OpenSQL how many sqlvar elements the statement is using, indicating the number of parameters specified. If the sqldata element of the SQLDA is set to 0 when you dynamically execute a procedure, it indicates that no parameters are being specified, and if there are parameters in the formal definition of the procedure, these are assigned null or default values when the procedure executes. If the procedure parameter is not nullable and does not have a default, an error is issued.

A parameter cannot be specified in the execute procedure statement that was not specified in the create procedure or register procedure statement.

Return_status is an integer variable that receives the return status from the procedure. If a *return_status* is not specified in the database procedure, or the return statement is not executed in the procedure, then 0 is returned to the calling application.

Note: The into clause cannot be used in interactive SQL.

The statement must be terminated according to the rules of the host language.

Permissions

You must have permission to execute the specified procedure.

Locking

The locks taken by the procedure depend on the statements that are executed inside the procedure. All locks are taken immediately when the procedure is executed.

Performance

The first execution of the database procedure may take slightly longer than subsequent executions. For the first execution, the host DBMS may need to create a query execution plan.

Examples

These examples assume the following create procedure statement has been successfully executed:

```
exec sql create procedure p
(i integer not null,
d date,
c varchar(100)) as ...
```

1. This example uses a host variable, a null constant, and an empty string.

```
exec sql execute procedure p
(i=:ivar, d=null, c='')
into :retstat;
```

2. This example assumes parameter “c” is null and uses a null indicator for parameter “d”.

```
exec sql execute procedure p
(i=:ivar, d=:dvar:ind)
into :retstat;
```

3. This example demonstrates the use of the whenever statement for intercepting errors and messages from a database procedure.

```
exec sql whenever sqlerror goto err_exit;
exec sql whenever sqlmessage call sqlprint;
exec sql execute procedure p into :retstat;
...
err_exit:
exec sql inquire_sql (:errbug = errortext);
```

4. This example demonstrates a dynamically executed execute procedure statement. The example creates and executes the dynamic equivalent of the following statement:

```
exec sql execute procedure enter_person
    (age = :i4_var, comment = :c100_var:indicator);
```

Dynamic version:

```
exec sql include sqlda;
allocate an SQLDA with 10 elements;
sqlda.sqln = 10;
sqlda.sqld = 2;

/* 20-byte character for procedure name */
proc_name = 'enter_person';

/* 4-byte integer to put into parameter 'age' */
sqlda.sqlvar(1).sqltype = int;
sqlda.sqlvar(1).sqllen = 4;
sqlda.sqlvar(1).sqldata = address(i4_var)
sqlda.sqlvar(1).sqlind = null;
sqlda.sqlvar(1).sqlname = 'age';

/* 100-byte nullable character to put into the
** parameter "comment" */
sqlda.sqlvar(2).sqltype = char;
sqlda.sqlvar(2).sqllen = 100;
sqlda.sqlvar(2).sqldata = address(c100_var);
sqlda.sqlvar(2).sqlind = address(indicator);
sqlda.sqlvar(2).sqlname = 'comment';

exec sql execute procedure :proc_name
    using descriptor sqlda;
```

5. Call a database procedure, passing parameters by reference. This enables the procedure to return the number of employees that received bonuses and the total amount of bonuses conferred.

```
exec sql execute procedure grant_bonuses
    (ecount = byref(:number_processed),
    bttotal = byref (:bonus_total));
```

Fetch

SQL

ESQL

*

Fetches data from a database cursor into host language variables.

Syntax

Non-dynamic version:

```
exec sql fetch cursor_name  
      into variable[:indicator_var] {, variable[:indicator_var]}
```

Dynamic version:

```
exec sql fetch cursor_name using descriptor descriptor_name
```

Description

The fetch statement retrieves the results of the select statement that is executed when a cursor is opened. When a cursor is opened, the cursor is positioned immediately before the first result row. The fetch statement advances the cursor to the first (or next) row and loads the values in that row into the specified variables. Each fetch statement advances the cursor one row.

There must be a one-to-one correspondence between variables specified in the into or using clause of fetch and expressions in the select clause of the declare cursor statement. If the number of variables does not match the number of expressions, the preprocessor will generate a warning and, at run time, the SQLCA variable sqlwarn3 will be set to "W".

The variables listed in the into clause can include structures that substitute for some or all of the variables. The structure is expanded by the preprocessor into the names of its individual variables. Therefore, placing a structure name in the into clause is equivalent to enumerating all members of the structure in the order in which they were declared.

The descriptor associated with the using descriptor clause must identify an SQLDA that contains type descriptions of one or more host language variables. Each element of the SQLDA is assigned the corresponding value in the current row of the cursor. For more details, refer to the "Dynamic OpenSQL" chapter, and to the Describe statement topic in this chapter.

The variables listed in the into clause or within the descriptor must be type-compatible with the values being retrieved. If a result expression is nullable, then the host language variable that will receive that value must have an associated null indicator.

If the statement does not fetch a row—a condition that occurs after all rows in the set have been processed—the sqlcode of the SQLCA is set to 100 (condition not found) and no values are assigned to the variables.

The cursor identified by *cursor_name* must be an open cursor. *Cursor_name* can be either a string constant or a host language variable.

The statement must be terminated according to the rules of the host language.

Examples

1. Typical fetch, with associated cursor statements.

```
exec sql begin declare section;
  name character_string(20);
  age integer;
exec sql end declare section;

exec sql declare cursor1 cursor for
select ename, age
from employee
order by ename;

...

exec sql open cursor1;

loop until no more rows
  exec sql fetch cursor1
  into :name, :age;
  print name, age;
end loop;

exec sql close cursor1;
```

Assuming the structure:

```
emprec
name character_string(20),
age integer;
```

the **fetch** in the above example could have been written

```
exec sql fetch cursor1
into :emprec;
```

The preprocessor would then interpret that statement as though it had been written

```
exec sql fetch cursor1
into :emprec.name, :emprec.age;
```

2. Fetch using an indicator variable.

```
exec sql fetch cursor2 into :name,
:salary:indicator_var;
```

Help

SQL
ESQL*

Gets information about SQL and a variety of database objects.

Syntax

```

help [*]
help tablename | viewname | indexname
        {, tablename | viewname | indexname}
help table tablename {, tablename}
help view viewname {, viewname}
help index indexname {, indexname}
help help
help sql
help sql_statement

```

Description

The help statement displays information about the contents of the database or specific tables. In addition, help can be used at the terminal monitor to obtain information regarding OpenSQL, including such features as the syntax of OpenSQL statements and valid data types. The following table lists help parameters:

Parameter	Description
*	Provides information about the makeup of all user-defined (not system) tables, views, and indexes in the database.
<i>tablename</i>	Provides the name, owner, creation date and time, and the DBMS version under which the table was created. Displays the name, data type, length, nullability, default, and key sequence for each column in the table.
<i>viewname</i>	Displays information similar to that displayed by help <i>tablename</i> .
<i>indexname</i>	Displays information similar to that displayed by help <i>tablename</i> .
table <i>tablename</i>	Displays the same information as help <i>tablename</i> plus additional table information, depending on the particular EDBC product or server.

Parameter	Description
view <i>viewname</i>	Displays the text of the view, the view name, owner and the state of the check option.
index <i>indexname</i>	Displays the name, owner, creation date and time, DBMS version under which it was created, and, for each column, its name, data type, length, nullability, default attribute, and key sequence.
help help	Displays a list of OpenSQL features for which help is available.
sql	Displays general information about OpenSQL.
<i>sql_statement</i>	Displays information on the specified <i>sql_statement</i> .

The asterisk (*) can be used as a pattern matching character when specifying an object name. For example, if you type `help table emp*`, you receive help on all tables in the database whose names begin with `emp`. If you type `help table *emp`, you receive help on all the tables whose names end with `emp`.

When the asterisk is used by itself with `help`, as in `help *`, OpenSQL provides information about all tables, views, and indexes in the database.

Examples

1. Retrieve a list of all tables, views, and indexes in the database.
`help;`
2. Retrieve help about the employee table.
`help employee;`
3. Retrieve help about the employee and dept tables.
`help employee, dept;`
4. Retrieve the definition of the view `highpay`.
`help view highpay;`
5. List information on the `select` statement.
`help select;`

Include

SQL	ESQL
	*

Includes an external file in source code.

Syntax

```
exec sql include filename | sqlca | sqlda
```

Description

The include statement provides a way to include external files in your program source code. This statement is normally used to include variable declarations, although it is not restricted to such use. When used to include variable declarations, it must be inside an embedded OpenSQL declaration section. The file generated by dclgen should be specified by means of the include statement.

Unlike the “include” facilities of most programming languages, the file specified by the OpenSQL include statement must comprise complete, not partial, statements or declarations. For example, it is illegal to use include in the following manner, where the file, predicate, contains a common predicate for select statements.

Incorrect:

```
exec sql select ename
from employee
where
exec sql include 'predicate';
```

Filename must be a quoted string constant specifying a file name or a logical system symbol that contains a file name. If the specified file has no extension, OpenSQL assumes the default extension of your host language.

The specified file can contain declarations, host language statements, embedded OpenSQL statements and nested includes. When the original source file is preprocessed, the include statement is replaced by a host language include directive, and the included file is also preprocessed.

There are two special instances of the include statement:

- **include sqlca** - Include the SQL Communications Area.
- **include sqllda** - Include the definitions associated with the SQL Descriptor Area.

Both these statements must be placed outside all declaration sections, preferably at the start of the program.

The statement must be terminated as required by the rules of your host language.

Examples

1. Include the SQLCA in the program.

```
exec sql include sqlca;
```

2. Include global variables.

```
exec sql begin declare section;  
exec sql include 'global.var';  
exec sql end declare section;
```

3. Include a file that contains header files that list variable declarations.

```
exec sql begin declare section;  
exec sql include 'mypath:global.var';  
exec sql end declare section;
```

Inquire_sql

SQL**ESQL**

*

Provides an application program with a variety of run-time information.

Syntax

```
exec sql inquire_sql (variable = object {, variable = object})
```

Description

The inquire_sql statement enables an embedded OpenSQL program to retrieve a variety of run-time information, such as:

- Information about the last executed database statement.

- Status information, such as the current session ID, the type of error (local or generic) being returned to the application, and whether a transaction is currently open.

The `inquire_sql` statement does not execute queries. The information `inquire_sql` returns to the program reflects the results of the last query that was executed. For this reason, the `inquire_sql` statement must be issued after the database statement about which you want information, and before another database statement is executed (and resets the values returned by `inquire_sql`).

Some of the information returned by `inquire_sql` is also available in the SQLCA. For example, the error number returned by the object `errno` is also available in the SQLCA `sqlcode` field.

Similarly, when an error occurs, you can retrieve the error text using `inquire_sql` with the `errortext` object or you can retrieve it from the SQLCA `sqlerrm` variable. `Errortext` provides the complete text of the error message, which is often truncated in `sqlerrm`.

This statement must be terminated according to the rules of your host language.

Types of Inquiries

The following table lists the valid inquiries that can be performed using the `inquire_sql` statement:

Object	Data Type	Comment
<code>dbmserror</code>	integer	The number of the error caused by the last query. This number corresponds to the value of <code>sqlerrd(1)</code> , the first element of the <code>sqlerrd</code> array in the SQLCA. You can specify whether a local or generic error is returned using <code>set_sql(error_type)</code> .
<code>endquery</code>	integer	If the previous fetch statement was issued after the last row of the cursor, <code>endquery</code> returns the value "1". If the last fetch statement returns a valid row, the value returned is "0". This is identical to the NOT FOUND condition (value 100) of the SQLCA variable <code>sqlcode</code> , which can be checked after a fetch statement is issued. Like the NOT FOUND condition, when <code>endquery</code> returns "1", the variables assigned values from the fetch remain unchanged.

Object	Data Type	Comment
errorno	integer	<p>A positive integer, representing the error number of the last query. The error number is cleared before each embedded OpenSQL statement, so that this object is only valid immediately after the statement in question.</p> <p>This error number is the same as the positive value of the SQLCA variable sqlcode, except in two cases:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ A single query generates multiple different errors, in which case the sqlcode identifies the first error number, and the errorno object identifies the last error. ■ After switching sessions. In this case, sqlcode reflects the results of the last statement executed before switching sessions, while errorno will reflect the results of the last statement executed in the current session. <p>If a statement executes with no errors or sqlcode is set to a positive number (for example, +100 to indicate no rows affected), then the error number is set to 0.</p>
errortext	character	<p>The error text of the last query. The error text is only valid immediately after the database statement in question. The text that is returned is the complete error message of the last error. This message may have been truncated when it was deposited into the SQLCA variable sqlerm. A character string result variable of size 512 should be sufficient to retrieve all OpenSQL error messages. If the result variable is shorter than the error message, the message is truncated. If there is no error message, a blank message is returned.</p>
errortype	character	<p>Returns genericerror if OpenSQL returns generic error numbers to errorno and sqlcode, or dbmserror if OpenSQL returns local DBMS error numbers to errorno and sqlcode. For information about generic and local errors, refer to the “OpenSQL Feature” chapter.</p>

Object	Data Type	Comment
programquit	integer	<p>Returns 1 if applications quit:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ After issuing a query when not connected to a database. ■ If the ODBC product or server fails. ■ If communications services fail. <p>Returns 0 if applications continue after encountering such errors.</p>
querytext	character	<p>Returns the text of the last query issued. Valid only if this feature is enabled. To enable or disable the saving of query text, use <code>set_sql(savequery)</code>. A maximum of 1024 characters is returned. If the query is longer, it is truncated to 1024 characters. If the receiving variable is smaller than the query text being returned, the text is truncated to fit.</p> <p>If a null indicator variable is specified together with the receiving host language variable, the indicator variable is set to -1 if query text cannot be returned, 0 if query text is returned successfully. Query text cannot be returned if (1) <code>savequery</code> is disabled, (2) no query has been issued in the current session, or (3) the <code>inquire_sql</code> statement is issued outside of a connected session.</p>
rowcount	integer	<p>The number of rows affected by the last query. "Affected" means subject to any of the following statements: insert, delete, update, select, fetch, create index, or create table as select. If any of these statements run successfully, the value of rowcount is the same as the value of the SQLCA variable <code>sqlerrd(3)</code>. If these statements generate errors, or if statements other than these are run, then the value of rowcount is negative and the value of <code>sqlerrd(3)</code> is 0.</p>
savequery	integer	<p>Returns 1 if query text saving is enabled, 0 if disabled.</p>
session	integer	<p>Returns the session identifier of the current database session. If the application is not using multiple sessions or there is no current session, 0 is returned.</p>
transaction	integer	<p>Returns a value of 1 if there is a transaction open. Returns 0 if no transaction is open.</p>

Example

Execute some database statements, and handle errors by displaying the message and aborting the transaction.

```

exec sql whenever sqlerror goto err_handle;

exec sql select name, sal
  into :name, :sal
  from employee
  where eno = :eno;

  if name = 'Badman' then
    exec sql delete from employee where eno = :eno;
  else if name = 'Goodman' then
    exec sql update employee set sal = sal + 3000
      where eno = :eno;
  end if;

exec sql commit;

...

err_handle:

exec sql whenever sqlerror continue;
exec sql inquire_sql (:err_msg = errortext);
  print 'EDBC product error: ',
  sqlca.sqlcode;
  print err_msg;
exec sql rollback;

  end if;

```

Insert

SQL	ESQL
*	*

Inserts rows into a table.

Syntax

```

[exec sql [repeated]] insert into tablename [(column {, column})]
  [values (value{, value})] | [subselect]

```

Description

The insert statement inserts new rows into the specified table. Use either the values list or specify a *subselect*. When using the values list, only a single row can be inserted with each execution of the statement. If you specify a *subselect*, then the statement inserts all the rows that result from the evaluation of the *subselect*. The subselect must not select rows from the table into which you are inserting rows; specifically, you cannot specify the same table in the into clause of the insert statement and the from clause of the subselect.

The *column* list identifies the columns of the specified table into which the values are placed. When the column list is included, OpenSQL places the first value in the values list or *subselect* into the first column named, the second value into the second column named, and so on. The data types of the values must be compatible with the data types of the columns in which they are placed.

The list of column names can be omitted only if:

- You specify a subselect that retrieves a value for each column in tablename. The values must be of an appropriate data type for each column and must be retrieved in an order corresponding to the order of the columns in tablename.
- There is a one-to-one correspondence between the values in the values list and the columns in the table. That is, the values list must have a value of the appropriate data type for each column and the values must be listed in an order corresponding to the order of the columns in the table.

Values in the values list must be string or numeric literals or one of the OpenSQL constants. (For details about constants, refer to the table in the “OpenSQL Data Types” chapter.) When the column list is included, any columns in the table that are not specified in the column list are assigned their default value. A value must be specified for mandatory columns. (Mandatory columns are columns defined as not default or not null with no default specified.)

Embedded Usage

Host language variables can be used within expressions in the values clause or in the search condition of the *subselect*. Variables used in search conditions must denote constant values, and cannot represent names of database columns or include any operators. A host string variable can also replace the complete search condition of the subselect, as when it is used in the forms system query mode. Host language variables that correspond to column expressions can include null indicator variables.

The keyword, *repeated*, directs the EDBC product or server to encode the insert and save its execution plan when it is first executed. This encoding can improve the performance of subsequent executions of the same insert.

Do not specify the repeated option for insert statement that is constructed using dynamic OpenSQL. A dynamic where clause cannot be used in a repeated insert: the query plan is saved when the query is first executed, and subsequent changes to the where clause will be ignored.

The values clause can include structure variables that substitute for some or all of the expressions. The structure is expanded by the preprocessor into the names of its individual members. Therefore, placing a structure name in the values clause is equivalent to enumerating all members of the structure in the order in which they were declared.

The `sqlerrd(3)` of the SQLCA indicates the number of rows inserted by the statement. If no rows are inserted, for example, if no rows satisfied the *subselect* search condition, then the `sqlcode` variable of the SQLCA is set to 100.

Examples

1. Add a row to an existing table.

```
insert into emp (name, sal, bdate)
values ('Jones, Bill', 10000, 1944);
```

2. Insert into the jobtable all rows from the newjob table where the job title is not Janitor.

```
insert into job (jid, jtitle, lowosal, highsal)
select job_no, title, lowosal, highsal
from newjob
where title <> 'Janitor';
```

3. Add a row to an existing table, using the default columns.

```
insert into emp
values ('Jones, Bill', 10000, 1944);
```

4. Use a structure to insert a row.

```
/* Description of table employees from
database deptdb */

exec sql declare employees table
(eno      smallint not null,
ename    character(20) not null,
age      smallint,
jobcode  smallint,
sal      float not null,
deptno   smallint);

exec sql begin declare section;

emprec
int      eno;
char     ename[21];
int      age;
int      job;
float    sal;
int      deptno;

exec sql end declare section;
```

```

/* Assign values to fields in structure */
eno = 99;
ename = "Arnold K. Arol";
age = 42;
jobcode = 100;
sal = 100000;
deptno=47;

exec sql connect deptdb;
exec sql insert into employees values (:emprec);
exec sql disconnect;

```

Open

SQL	ESQL
	*

Opens a cursor for processing.

Syntax

Non-dynamic version:

```
exec sql open cursor_name [for readonly]
```

Dynamic version:

```
exec sql open cursor_name [for readonly]
    [using variable {, variable} |
    using descriptor descriptor_name]
```

Description

The open statement executes the select statement specified when the cursor was declared and positions the cursor immediately before the first row returned. (To actually retrieve the rows, the fetch statement must be used.) A cursor must be opened before it can be used in any data manipulation statements such as fetch, update, or delete and you must declare a cursor before it can be opened.

The for readonly clause indicates that, though the cursor may have been declared for update, the cursor is being opened for reading only. The for readonly clause may improve the performance of data retrieval, and should be used whenever appropriate.

When a cursor that was declared for a dynamically prepared select statement is opened, the using clause must be used if the prepared select statement contains constants specified with question marks. For information about using question marks to specify constants in prepared statements, refer to the Prepare topic in this chapter.

The using clause provides the values for these “unspecified” constants in the prepared select so that the open statement can execute the select. For example, assume that your application contains the following dynamically prepared select statement:

```
statement_buffer =  
'select * from' + tablename + 'where low < ? and  
  high > ?';  
exec sql prepare sel_stmt from :statement_buffer;
```

When the cursor is opened for this prepared select statement, values must be provided for the question marks in the where clause. The using clause performs this task.

```
Declare the cursor for sel_stmt;  
assign values to variables named “low” and “high”;  
exec sql open cursor1  
using :low, :high;
```

The values represented by low and high replace the question marks in the where clause and the DBMS can evaluate the select. If Descriptor Area (SQLDA) is used, then the values that replace the question marks are taken from variables pointed to by the sqlvar elements of the descriptor. Allocate the SQLDA and the variables to which the sqlvar elements point and place values in the variables before using the descriptor in an open cursor statement. For more information about the SQLDA and its sqlvar elements, refer to the “Dynamic OpenSQL” chapter.

The same cursor can be opened and closed (with the close statement) any number of times in a single program. It must be closed, however, before it can be reopened.

A string constant or a host language variable can be used to represent *cursor_name*. This statement must be terminated according to the rules of your host language.

Examples

1. Declare and open a cursor.

```
Exec sql declare cursor1 cursor for  
  select :one + 1, ename, age  
  from employee  
  where age >= :minage;  
...  
exec sql open cursor1;
```

When the open statement is encountered the variables, one and minage, are evaluated. The first statement that follows the opening of a cursor should be a fetch statement to define the cursor position and retrieve data into the indicated variables:

```
exec sql fetch cursor1
      into :two, :name, :age;
```

The value of the expression, :one + 1, is assigned to the variable, two, by the fetch.

- The following example demonstrates the dynamic OpenSQL syntax. In a typical application, the prepared statement and its parameters would be constructed dynamically.

```
Select_buffer = 'select * from employee
                where eno = ?';
exec sql prepare select1 from :select_buffer;
exec sql declare cursor2 cursor for select1;
eno = 1234;
exec sql open cursor2 using :eno;
```

Prepare

SQL	ESQL
	*

Prepares and names a dynamically constructed OpenSQL statement for execution.

Syntax

```
exec sql prepare statement_name
                [into descriptor_name [using names]]
                from string_constant | string_variable
```

Description

The prepare statement encodes the dynamically constructed OpenSQL statement string in the from clause and assigns it the specified *statement_name*. When the program subsequently executes the prepared statement, it uses the name to identify the statement, rather than the full statement string. Both the name and statement string can be represented by either a string constant or a host language variable.

Within the statement string, replace constant expressions in where clauses, insert values clauses, and update set clauses with question marks. When the statement executes, these question marks are replaced with specified values. Question marks cannot be used in place of table or column names or reserved words.

To illustrate, the following example prepares and executes a delete statement on a dynamically defined table:

```
statement_buffer =  
'delete from ' + table_name + ' where code = ?';  
exec sql prepare del_stmt from :statement_buffer;  
  
...  
  
exec sql execute del_stmt using :code;
```

The value in the variable, code, replaces the ? in the where clause of the prepared delete statement.

Illustrating incorrect usage, the following example is wrong because it includes a parameter specification in place of the table name:

```
exec sql prepare bad_stmt  
from 'delete from ? where code = ?';
```

Whenever an application executes a prepared statement that contains parameters specified with questions marks, the program must supply values for each question mark. If the statement string is blank or empty, OpenSQL returns a run-time syntax error.

If the statement name identifies an existing prepared statement, the existing statement is destroyed and the new statement takes effect. This rule holds across the dynamic scope of the application. The statement name must not identify an existing statement name that is associated with an open cursor. The cursor must be closed before its statement name can be destroyed. Once prepared, the statement can be executed any number of times.

However, if a transaction is rolled back or committed, the prepared statement becomes invalid. If the prepared statement is to be executed only once, execute immediate should be used on the statement string. If the prepared statement is to be executed repeatedly, the prepare and execute sequence should be used.

The following statements cannot be prepared and executed dynamically:

call	execute immediate
close	fetch help
connect	include
declare	inquire_sql
describe	open
direct	set
disconnect	set_sql
endselect	whenever
execute	

In addition, you cannot prepare and dynamically execute OpenSQL statements that include the key word repeated.

If the statement string is a select statement, the select must not include an into clause. The select statement string can include the different clauses of the cursor select statement, such as the for update and order by clauses.

As with execute immediate, the statement string must not include exec sql, any host language terminators, or references to variable names. If your statement string includes embedded quotes, it is easiest to specify the string in a host language variable. If you specify a string that includes quotes as a string constant, remember that quoted characters *within* the statement string must follow the OpenSQL string delimiting rules. Consequently, even if your host language delimits strings with double quotes, the quoted characters within the statement string must be delimited by single quotes. For complete information about embedding quotes within a string literal, refer to your host language companion guide.

The into *descriptor_name* clause is equivalent to issuing the describe statement after the statement is successfully prepared. For example, the prepare statement

```
exec sql prepare prep_stmt  
      into sqlda from :statement_buffer;
```

is equivalent to

```
exec sql prepare prep_stmt from :statement_buffer;  
exec sql describe prep_stmt into sqlda;
```

The into clause returns the same information as does the describe statement. If the prepared statement is a select, the descriptor will contain the data types, lengths, and names of the result columns. If the statement was not a select, the descriptor's sqlid field will contain a zero. For more information about the results of describing a statement, refer to the "Dynamic OpenSQL" chapter, and to the Describe statement description in this chapter.

This statement must be terminated according to the rules of your host language.

Example

A two-column table, whose name is defined dynamically but whose columns are called, high and low, is manipulated within an application, and statements to delete, update and select the values are prepared.

```
get tablename from a set of names;
statement_buffer =
  'delete from ' + tablename + '
  where high = ? and low = ?';
exec sql prepare del_stmt from :statement_buffer;

statement_buffer =
  'insert into ' + tablename + ' values (?, ?)';
exec sql prepare ins_stmt from :statement_buffer;

statement_buffer =
  'select * from ' + tablename + ' where low ?';
exec sql prepare sel_stmt from :statement_buffer;
...
exec sql execute del_stmt using :high, :low;
...
exec sql execute ins_stmt using :high, :low;
...
exec sql declare sel_csr for sel_stmt;
exec sql open sel_csr using :high, :low;
loop while more rows
  exec sql fetch sel_csr into :high1, :low1;
  ...
end loop;
```

Rollback

SQL	ESQL
*	*

Rolls back the current transaction.

Syntax

```
[exec sql] rollback [work]
```

Description

The rollback statement backs out the changes made during the current transaction. The optional key word `work` has no effect. It is included for compatibility with other versions of SQL.

Embedded Usage

In addition to aborting the current transaction, an embedded rollback:

- Closes all open cursors
- Discards all statements that were prepared in the current transaction

Performance

Executing a rollback undoes the work done by a transaction. The time required to do this is generally the same amount of time as it took to perform the work originally.

Select (interactive)

SQL	ESQL
*	

Retrieves values from one or more tables or views.

Syntax

```
select [all | distinct] * | result_expression {, result_expression}
      from from_source {, from_source}
      [where search_condition]
      [group by column {, column}]
      [having search_condition]
      {union [all] (select)}
      [order by result_column [asc | desc]
       {, result_column [asc | desc]}];
```

where *result_expression* is one of the following:

- *[schema.]tablename.** (to select all columns)
- *[[schema.]tablename.]columnname [[as] result_column]*
(to select one column)
- *expression [as] result_column*

Description

The select statement returns values from one or more tables or views in the form of a single result table. Using the various clauses of the select statement, you can specify:

- Qualifications for the values in the result table
- Sorting and grouping of the values in the result table

This statement description presents details of the select statement in interactive OpenSQL (ISQL). In ISQL the results of a query are displayed on your terminal. In embedded OpenSQL (ESQL), results are returned in host language variables. For details about using the select statement in ESQL, refer to Select (embedded) in this chapter.

The following sections describe the clauses of the select statement, explain how to create simple queries, and explain how the results of a query are obtained.

Select Statement Clauses

The select statement has the following clauses:

- select
- from
- where
- group by
- having
- order by

The following sections describe how the clauses are processed and explain each clause in detail.

Query Evaluation

This section describes the logic applied to the evaluation of select statements. This logic does not precisely reflect how OpenSQL evaluates your query to figure out the fastest and most efficient way to return results. However, by applying the logic presented here to your queries and data, you can anticipate the results of your query.

1. **Evaluate the from clause.** Combine all the sources specified in the from clause to create a *Cartesian product* (a table composed of all the rows and columns of the sources). If joins are specified, evaluate each join to obtain its results table, then combine it with the other sources in the from clause. If select distinct is specified, discard duplicate rows.
2. **Apply the where clause.** Discard rows in the result table that do not fulfill the restrictions specified in the where clause.
3. **Apply the group by clause.** Group results according to the columns specified in the group by clause.
4. **Apply the having clause.** Discard rows in the result table that do not fulfill the restrictions specified in the having clause.
5. **Evaluate the select clause.** Discard columns that are not specified in the select clause.
6. **Perform any unions.** Combine result tables as specified in the union clause.
7. **Apply the order by clause.** Sort the result rows as specified.

The Select Clause

The select clause specifies which values are to be returned. To display all the columns of a table, use the asterisk wildcard character (*). For example, the following query displays all rows and columns from the employees table:

```
select * from employees;
```

To select specific columns, specify the column names. For example, the following query displays all rows, but only two columns from the employees table:

```
select ename, eaddress from employees;
```

To specify the table from which the column is to be selected, use the `[schema.]table.columnname` syntax. For example:

```
select personnel.managers.name,  
       personnel.employees.name
```

In the preceding example, both source tables contain a column called, name. The column names are preceded by the name of the source table. The first column of the result table contains the values from the name column of the managers table, and the second column contains the values from the name column of the employees table. If a column name is used in more than one of the source tables, you must qualify the column name with the table to which it belongs, or with a correlation name. For details, refer to the From Clause in this chapter.

To eliminate duplicate rows from the result table, specify the key word `distinct`. To preserve duplicate rows, specify the key word `all`. By default, duplicate rows are preserved.

For example, the following table contains order information. The `partno` column contains duplicate values, because different customers have placed orders for the same part.

partno	customerno	qty	unit_price
123-45	101	10	10.00
123-45	202	100	10.00
543-21	987	2	99.99
543-21	654	33	99.99
987-65	321	20	29.99

The following query displays the part numbers for which there are orders on file:

```
select distinct partno from orders
```

The result table looks like this:

partno
123-45
543-21
987-65

A constant value can be included in the result table. For example:

```
select 'Name:', ename, date('today'),
       dept from employees;
```

The preceding query selects all rows from the employees table. The result table is composed of the string constant 'Name:', the employee's name, today's date (specified using the constant today), and the employee's department, or if there is no department assigned, the string constant 'Unassigned'.

The result table looks like this (depending, of course, on the data in the employees table):

COL1	ename	COL3	COL4
Name:	Mike Sannicandro	Aug 8, 1993	Micrography
Name:	Dave Murtagh	Aug 8, 1993	Percussive arts
Name:	Benny Barth	Aug 8, 1993	Unassigned
Name:	Dean Reilly	Aug 8, 1993	Lumber
Name:	Al Obidinski	Aug 8, 1993	Unassigned

The select clause can be used to obtain values calculated from the contents of a table. For example:

```
select ename, annual_salary/52 from employees;
```

The preceding query calculates each employee's weekly salary based on their annual salary. Aggregate functions can be used to calculate values based on the contents of column. For example:

```
select max(salary), min(salary), avg(salary)
       from employees;
```

The preceding query returns the highest, lowest, and average salary from the employees table. These values are based on the amounts stored in the salary column. For details about aggregate functions, refer to the "Elements of OpenSQL Statements" chapter.

To specify a name for a column in the result table, use the *as result_column* clause. For example:

```
select ename, annual_salary/52 as weekly_salary
from employees;
```

In the preceding example, the name, *weekly_salary*, is assigned to the second result column. If you omit a result column name for columns that are not drawn directly from a table (for example, calculated values or constants), the result columns are assigned the default name *COLn*, where *n* is the column number. Result columns are numbered from left to right. Column names cannot be assigned in select clauses that use the asterisk wildcard (*) to select all the columns in a table.

The From Clause

The from clause specifies the source tables and views from which data is to be read. The specified tables and views must exist at the time the query is issued. The tables or views must be specified using the following syntax:

```
[schema.]table [corr_name]
```

where *table* is the name of a table or view. To ensure program portability, specify no more than 15 tables in a query, including the tables in the from list and tables in subqueries. (Individual host database management systems may allow more than 15 tables.)

The following sections explain these sources in detail.

Specifying Tables and Views

This section describes how to specify table names in queries. The same rules apply to views.

To select data from a table you own, specify the name of the table. To select data from a table you do not own, specify *schema.table*, where *schema* is the name of the user that owns the table. However, if the table is owned by the database DBA, the schema qualifier is not required. You must have the appropriate permissions to access the table (or view) granted by the owner.

A *correlation name* can be specified for any table in the from clause. A correlation name is an alias (or alternate name) for the table. For example:

```
select... from employees e, managers m...
```

The preceding example assigns the correlation name “e” to the employees table and “m” to the managers table. Correlation names are useful for abbreviating long table names and for joining a table to itself.

If you assign a correlation name to a table, you must refer to the table using the correlation name. For example:

Correct:

```
select e.name, m.name
from employees e, managers m...
```

Incorrect:

```
select employees.name, managers.name
from employees e, managers m...
```

The Where Clause

The where clause specifies criteria that restrict the contents of the results table. You can test for simple relationships or, using subqueries, relationships between a column and a set of columns.

Simple Where Clauses

Using a simple where clause, you can restrict the contents of the results table as follows:

- Comparisons

```
select ename from employees
where manager = 'Jones';
```

```
select ename from employees
where salary > 50000;
```

- Ranges

```
select ordnum from orders
where odate between date('jan-01-1993') and
date('today');
```

- Set membership

```
select * from orders
where partno in ('123-45', '678-90');
```

- Pattern matching

```
select * from employees
where ename like 'A%';
```

- Nulls

```
select ename from employees
where edept is null;
```

- Combined restrictions using logical operators

```
select ename from employees
where edept is null and
hiredate = date('today');
```

For details about query restriction operators, refer to Predicates in the “Elements of OpenSQL Statements” chapter.

Joins

Joins combine information from multiple tables and views into a single result table, according to column relationships specified in the where clause.

For example, given the following two tables:

Employee Table

ename	edeptno
Benny Barth	10
Dean Reilly	11
Rudy Salvini	99
Tom Hart	123

Departments Table

ddeptno	dname
10	Lumber
11	Sales
99	Accounting
123	Finance

The following query joins the two tables on the relationship of equality between values in the `edeptno` and `ddeptno` columns. The result is a list of employees and the names of the departments in which they work:

```
select ename, dname from employees, departments
where edeptno = ddeptno;
```

A table can be joined to itself using correlation names – this is useful when listing hierarchical information. For example, the following query displays each employee’s name and the name of the employee’s manager.

```
select e.ename, m.ename
       from employees e, employees m
       where e.eno = m.eno
```

Tables can be joined on any number of related columns. The data types of the join columns must be comparable.

Join Relationships

The simple joins illustrated in the two preceding examples depend on equal values in the join columns. This type of join is called an *equijoin*. Other types of relationships can be specified in a join. For example, the following query lists salespersons that have met or exceeded their sales quota:

```
select s.name, s.sales_ytd
  from sales s, quotas q
  where  s.empnum = d.empnum and
        s.sales_ytd >= d.quota;
```

Subqueries

Subqueries are select statements placed in a where or having clause. The results returned by the subquery are used to evaluate the conditions specified in the where or having clause. Subqueries are also referred to as *subselects*.

Subqueries must return a single column, and cannot include an order by or union clause.

The following example uses a subquery to display all employees whose salary is above the average salary:

```
select * from employees where salary >
  (select avg(salary) from employees);
```

In the preceding example, the subquery returns a single value: the average salary. Subqueries can also return sets of values. For example, the following query returns all employees in all departments managed by Barth.

```
select ename from employees where edept in
  (select ddept from departments
   where dmgr = 'Barth');
```

For details about the operators used in conjunction with subqueries, refer to Predicates in the “Elements of OpenSQL Statements” chapter.

The Order by Clause

The order by clause specifies the columns on which the results table is to be sorted. Columns in the order by clause can be specified using either the column name or a number corresponding to the position of the column in the from clause. (You must specify unnamed result columns using a number.) In a union select, use numbers to specify the columns in the order by clause; column names cannot be used.

For example, if the employees table contains the following data:

ename	dept	manager
Murtagh	shipping	Myron
Obidinski	lumber	Myron
Reilly	finance	Costello
Barth	lumber	Myron
Karol	editorial	Costello
Smith	shipping	Myron
Loram	editorial	Costello
Delore	finance	Costello
Kugel	food prep	Snowden

then this query:

```
select manager, ename, dept from employees
order by manager, dept, ename
```

produces this list of managers, the departments they manage, and the employees in each department:

Costello	editorial	Karol
Costello	editorial	Loram
Costello	finance	Delore
Costello	finance	Reilly
Myron	lumber	Barth
Myron	lumber	Obidinski
Myron	shipping	Murtagh
Myron	shipping	Smith
Snowden	food prep	Kugel

and this query:

```
select ename, edept, emanager from employees
order by ename
```

produces this alphabetized employee list:

Barth	lumber	Myron
Delore	finance	Costello
Karol	editorial	Costello
Kugel	food prep	Snowden
Loram	editorial	Costello
Murtagh	shipping	Myron
Obidinski	lumber	Myron
Reilly	finance	Costello
Smith	shipping	Myron

To display result columns sorted in descending order (numeric or alphabetic), specify order by *columnname* desc. For example, to display the employees in each department from oldest to youngest:

```
select edept, ename, eage from employees
order by edept, eage desc;
```

If a nullable column is specified in the order by clause, nulls are sorted to the beginning or end of the results table, depending on the host DBMS.

Note: If the order by clause is omitted, the order of the rows in the results table is not guaranteed by the DBMS. In particular, the order of the rows in the results table is not guaranteed to have any relationship to the source tables' storage structure or key structure.

The Group by Clause

The group by clause combines results for identical values in a column. This clause is typically used in conjunction with aggregate functions to generate a single figure for each unique value in a column. For example, to obtain the number of orders for each part number in the orders table:

```
select partno, count(*) from orders
group by partno;
```

The preceding query returns one row for each part number in the orders table, even though there may be many orders for the same part number.

Nulls are used to represent unknown data, and two nulls are typically not considered equal in OpenSQL comparisons. However, the group by clause treats nulls as equal and returns a single row for nulls in a grouped column.

Grouping can be performed on multiple columns. For example, to display the number of orders for each part placed each day:

```
select odate, partno, count(*) from orders
group by odate, partno;
```

If the group by clause is specified, all columns in the select clause must be specified in the group by clause or be aggregate functions.

The Having Clause

The having clause filters the results of the group by clause, in the same way the where clause filters the results of the select...from clauses. The having clause uses the same restriction operators as the where clause.

For example, to return the number of orders placed today for each part:

```
select odate, partno, count(*) from orders
group by odate, partno
having odate = date('today');
```

The Union Clause

The union clause enables the results of select statements to be combined into a single result table. For example, to list all employees in the table of active employees plus those in the table of retired employees:

```
select ename from active_emps
union
select ename from retired_emps;
```

By default, the union clause eliminates any duplicate rows in the result table. To retain duplicates, specify union all. You can combine any number of select statements using the union clause, and you can use both union and union all when combining multiple tables.

Unions are subject to the following restrictions:

- The select statements must return the same number of columns.
- The columns returned by the select statements must correspond in order and data type. The column names do not have to be identical.
- The select statements cannot include individual order by clauses.

To sort the result table, specify the order by clause following the last select statement. The result columns returned by a union are named according to the first select statement.

By default, unions are evaluated from left to right. To specify a different order of evaluation, use parentheses.

Any number of select statements can be combined using the union clause. There is a maximum of 30 tables allowed in any query.

Examples

1. Find all employees who make more than their managers. This example illustrates the use of correlation names.

```
select e.ename
from employee e, dept, employee m
where e.dept = dept.dno and dept.mgr = m.eno
and e.salary > m.salary;
```

2. Select all information for employees that have salaries above the average salary.

```
select * from employee
where salary > (select avg(salary) from employee);
```

3. Select employee information sorted by department and, within department, by name.

```
select e.ename, d.dname from employee e, dept d
where e.dept = d.dno
order by dname, ename;
```

4. Select lab samples analyzed by lab #12 from both production and archive tables.

```
select * from samples s
where s.lab = 12
union
select * from archived_samples s
where s.lab = 12
```

Select (embedded)

SQL	ESQL
	*

Retrieves values from the database.

Syntax

Non-cursor version:

```
exec sql [repeated] select [all | distinct]  
    * | result_expression {, result_expression}  
    into variable[:indicator_var] {, variable[:indicator_var]}  
    from from_source {, from_source}  
    [where search_condition]  
    [group by column {, column}]  
    [having search_condition]  
    [union [all] full_select]  
    [order by result_column [asc | desc]  
        {, result_column [asc | desc]}]  
[exec sql begin;  
    program code;  
exec sql end;]
```

where *result_expression* is one of the following:

- *[schema.]tablename.** (to select all columns)
- *[[schema.]tablename.]columnname as result_column*
(to select one column)
- *expression as result_column*

Cursor version (embedded within a declare cursor statement):

```
select [all | distinct]  
    * | result_expression {, result_expression}  
    from from_source {, from_source}  
    [where search_condition]  
    [group by column {, column}]  
    [having search_condition]  
    [union [all] full_select]  
    [order by result_column [asc | desc]  
        {, result_column [asc | desc]}];
```

Description

The embedded select statement returns values from tables to host language variables in an embedded OpenSQL program. For details about the various clauses of the select statement, refer to the statement description of the Interactive Select statement. The following sections discuss details of interest to the embedded OpenSQL programmer.

Non-Cursor Select

The non-cursor version of the embedded OpenSQL select statement can be used to retrieve a single row or a set of rows from the database.

If the optional begin-end block syntax is not used, then the embedded select statement can retrieve only one row from the database. This kind of select statement is called the *singleton* select and is compatible with the ISO standard. If the singleton select does try to retrieve more than one row, an error occurs and the result variables hold information from the first row. For example, the following example retrieves a single row from the database:

```
exec sql select ename, sal
into :ename, :sal
from employee
where eno = :eno;
```

Select Loops

A select loop can be used to read a table and process its rows individually. When a program needs to read a table without issuing any other database statements during the retrieval (such as for report generation), use a select loop. In other cases, such as when database updates are required, or when other tables need to be browsed while the current retrieval is in progress, use a cursor.

The begin-end statements delimit the statements in the select loop. The code is executed once for each row as it is returned from the database. Statements cannot be placed between the select statement and the begin statement.

Within the select loop, no other statements that access the database can be issued. This will cause a run-time error. To see how to manipulate and update rows and tables within the database while data is being retrieved, refer to Data Manipulation with Cursors in the “Embedded OpenSQL” chapter.

However, if your program is connected to multiple database sessions, queries can be issued from within the select loop by switching to another session. To return to the outer select loop, switch back to the session in which the select statement was issued. To avoid preprocessor errors, the nested queries cannot be within the syntactic scope of the loop but must be referenced by a subroutine call or some form of a goto statement. For more information about multiple sessions, refer to the “OpenSQL Features” chapter.

There are two ways to terminate the select loop: run it to completion or issue the endselect statement. A host language goto statement cannot be used to exit or return to the select loop.

To terminate a select loop before all rows are retrieved the application must issue the endselect statement. The endselect statement must be syntactically within the begin-end block that delimits the select loop. For more information, refer to the Endselect statement description in this chapter.

The following example retrieves a set of rows from the database:

```
exec sql select ename, sal, eno
into :ename, :sal, :eno
from employee
order by eno;
exec sql begin;
browse data;
if error condition then
    exec sql endselect;
end if;
exec sql end;
```

Retrieving Values into Host Language Variables

The into clause specifies the host program variables into which the values retrieved by the select are loaded. There must be a one-to-one correspondence between expressions in the select clause and the variables in the into clause. If the statement does not retrieve any rows, the variables are not modified. If the number of values retrieved from the database is different from the number of columns, an error is issued and the sqlwarn3 variable of the SQLCA is assigned the value 'W'. Each result variable may have an indicator variable for null data.

Host language variables can be used as expressions in the select clause and the *search_condition*, in addition to their use in the into clause. Variables used in *search_conditions* must denote constant values and cannot represent names of database columns or include any operators. Host string variables can also substitute for the complete search condition.

Host Language Variables in the Union Clause

When select statements are combined using the union clause, the into clause must appear only after the first list of select result expressions, because all result rows of the select statements that are combined by the union clause must be identical. The following example shows the correct use of host language variables in a union. Result variables are specified only for the first select statement.

```
exec sql select ename, enumber
         into :name, :number
         from employee
union
select dname, dnumber
   from directors
  where dnumber < 100;
```

Repeated Queries

To reduce the overhead required to repeatedly execute a select query statement, specify the query as a repeated query. For repeated queries, OpenSQL saves the query execution plan after the first time the query is executed. This can account for significant performance improvements on subsequent executions of the same select.

If your application needs to be able to change the search conditions, dynamically constructed search conditions cannot be used with repeated queries. The saved execution plan is based on the initial value of the search condition and subsequent changes are ignored.

Cursor Select

The cursor select statement is specified as part of a declare cursor statement. Within the declare cursor statement, the select statement is not preceded by exec sql. The cursor select statement specifies the data to be retrieved by the cursor. When executed, the declare cursor statement does not perform the retrieval—the retrieval occurs when the cursor is opened. If the cursor is declared for update, the select cannot refer to more than one table, cannot refer to a view and cannot include a group by, having, order by, or union clause.

The cursor select can return multiple rows, because the cursor provides the means to process and update retrieved rows one at a time. The correlation of expressions to host language variables takes place with the fetch statement, so the cursor select does not include an into clause. The rules for the remaining clauses are the same as in the non-cursor select.

Error Handling

If the select statement retrieves no rows, the SQLCA variable `sqlcode` is set to 100. The number of rows returned from the database is in the SQLCA variable `sqlerrd(3)`. In a select loop, if the `endselect` statement was issued, `sqlerrd(3)` contains the number of rows retrieved before `endselect` was issued.

Embedded Usage

Host language variables can be used as expressions in the select clause and the *search_conditions*. Variables used in *search_conditions* must specify constant values and cannot represent names of database columns or include any operators. Host string variables can also substitute for the complete search condition.

Examples

1. The following examples illustrate the non-cursor select. For examples of the cursor select statement, refer to the Declare Cursor statement description in this chapter.

Retrieve the name and salary of an employee. Drop locks by committing the transaction.

```
exec sql select ename, sal
       into :namevar, :salvar
       from employee
       where eno = :numvar;
exec sql commit;
```

2. Select all columns in a row into a host language variable structure. (The `emprec` structure has members that correspond in name and type to columns of the employee table.)

```
exec sql select *
       into :emprec
       from employee
       where eno = 23;
```

3. Select a constant into a variable.

```
exec sql select 'Name: ', ename
       into :title, :ename
       from employee
       where eno >= 148 and age = :age;
```

4. Select the row in the employee table whose number and name correspond to the variables, numvar and namevar. The columns are selected into a host structure called, emprec. Because this statement is issued many times (in a subprogram, perhaps), it is formulated as a repeat query.

```
exec sql repeated select *
  into :emprec
  from employee
  where eno = :numvar and ename = :namevar;
```

5. Example of a select loop: insert new employees, and then select all employees and generate a report. If an error occurs during the process, end the retrieval and back out the changes. No database statements are allowed inside the select loop (begin-end block).

```
error = 0;
exec sql insert into employee
  select * from newhires; exec sql select eno, ename, eage, esal, dname
  into :eno, :ename, :eage, :esal, :dname
  from employee e, dept d
  where e.edept = d.deptno
  group by ename, dname
exec sql begin;
  generate report of information;
  if error condition then
    error = 1;
    exec sql endselect;
  end if;
exec sql end;
/*
** Control transferred here by completing the
** retrieval or because the endselect statement
** was issued.
*/
if error = 1
  print 'Error encountered after row',
    sqlca.sqlerrd(3);
  exec sql rollback;
else
  print 'Successful addition and reporting';
  exec sql commit;
end if;
```

6. The following select statement uses a string variable to substitute for the complete search condition. The variable *search_condition* is constructed from an interactive forms application in query mode, and during the select loop the employees who satisfy the qualification are displayed.

```
run forms in query mode;
construct search_condition of employees;

exec sql select *
  into :emprec
  from employee
  where :search_condition;
exec sql begin;
  load emprec into a table field;
exec sql end;
display table field for browsing;
```

7. This example illustrates session switching inside a select loop. The main program processes sales orders and calls the subroutine, `new_customer`, for every new customer. For a full discussion of multiple sessions, refer to the “OpenSQL Features” chapter.

The main program:

```
...
exec sql include sqlca;
exec sql begin declare section;

/* Include output of dclgen for declaration of
** record order_rec */
exec sql include 'decls';
exec sql end declare section;

exec sql connect customers session 1;
exec sql connect sales session 2;
...

exec sql select * into :order_rec from orders;
exec sql begin;
    if (order_rec.new_customer = 1) then
        call new_customer(order_rec);
    endif
    process order;
exec sql end;
...

exec sql disconnect;
```

The subroutine, `new_customer`, which is called from the select loop, contains the session switch:

```
subroutine new_customer(record order_rec)
begin;

exec sql set_sql(session = 1);
    exec sql insert into accounts
        values (:order_rec);

process any errors;

exec sql set_sql(session = 2);

/* Reset status information before resuming
** select loop */

sqlca.sqlcode = 0;
sqlca.sqlwarn.sqlwarn0 = ' ';

end subroutine;
```

Set

SQL	ESQL
*	*

Sets a session option.

Syntax

```
[exec sql] set autocommit on | off
```

Description

The set statement specifies a run-time option for the current session. The selected run-time option remains in effect until the end of the session or another set statement changes its value within the session.

The Set Autocommit Option

The set autocommit on statement causes an implicit commit to occur after every successfully executed query. Set autocommit off means an explicit commit statement is required to commit a transaction. By default, autocommit is off.

This statement cannot be issued within a transaction. For a description of OpenSQL transaction behavior, refer to the “OpenSQL Features” chapter.

Set_sql

SQL	ESQL
	*

Sets a variety of session options.

Syntax

```
exec sql set_sql (object = value {, object = value})
```

Description

The `set_sql` statement can switch sessions in a multiple session application, specify the type of DBMS error to be returned to an application, change the default behavior when a connection error is experienced, set trace functions, and set other session characteristics.

`set_sql` can be used to override `II_EMBED_SET`. Refer to your installation guide for more information about `II_EMBED_SET`.

The following table provides a summary of the valid objects and values for the `set_sql` statement.

Object	Data Type	Description
<code>dbmserror</code>	integer	Sets the value returned by the <code>inquire_sql(dbmserror)</code> statement. For details about the values returned by the <code>inquire_sql(dbmserror)</code> statement, refer to Local and Generic Errors in the “OpenSQL Features” chapter.
<code>errorhandler</code>	function pointer	Specifies a user-defined routine to be called when an OpenSQL error occurs in an embedded application. The error handler must be specified as a function pointer.
<code>errorno</code>	integer	Sets the value returned by the <code>inquire_sql(errorno)</code> statement. For details about the values returned by the <code>inquire_sql(errorno)</code> statement, refer to Local and Generic Errors in the “OpenSQL Features” chapter.

Object	Data Type	Description
errortype	character string	Specifies the type of error number returned to <code>errno</code> and <code>sqlcode</code> . Value can be either <code>genericerror</code> , specifying generic error numbers or <code>dbmserror</code> , specifying local DBMS error numbers. Generic error numbers are returned by default. For information about local and generic errors, refer to Local and Generic Errors in the “OpenSQL Features” chapter.
gcafile	character string	Specifies an alternate text file to which OpenSQL writes GCA information. The default file name is “ <code>iiprtgca.log</code> ”. To enable this feature, use the <code>set_sql printgca</code> option. If a directory or path specification is omitted, the file is created in the current default directory.
printgca	integer	Turns the <code>printgca</code> debugging feature on or off. <code>Printgca</code> prints all communications (GCA) messages from the application as it executes (by default, to the file “ <code>iiprtgca.log</code> ” in the current directory). Value can be either 1, to turn the feature on, or 0, to turn the feature off.
printqry	integer	Turns the <code>printqry</code> debugging feature on or off. <code>Printqry</code> prints all query text and timing information from the application as it executes (by default to the file “ <code>iiprtqry.log</code> ” in the current directory). Value can be either 1, to turn the feature on, or 0, to turn the feature off.
printrace	integer	Enable/disable trapping of DBMS trace messages to a text file (by default, “ <code>iiprttrc.log</code> ”). Specify 1 to enable trapping of trace output, 0 to disable trapping.

Object	Data Type	Description
programquit	integer	<p>Specifies whether OpenSQL aborts on one of the following errors:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ An application issues a query, but is not connected to a database. ■ The EDBC product or DBMS fails. ■ Communications services fail. <p>Specify 1 to abort on these conditions, 0 to continue.</p>
qryfile	character string	<p>Specifies an alternate text file to which OpenSQL writes query information. The default file name is "iiprtqry.log". To enable this feature, use the set_sql printqry option.</p> <p>If a directory or path specification is omitted, the file is created in the current default directory.</p>
savequery	integer	<p>Enables/disables saving of the text of the last query issued. Specify 1 to enable, 0 to disable. To obtain the text of the last query, issue the inquire_sql(querytext) statement. To determine whether saving is enabled, use the inquire_sql(savequery) statement.</p>
session	integer	<p>Sets the current session. <i>Value can be any session identifier associated with an open session in the application.</i></p>
tracefile	character string	<p>Specifies an alternate text file to which OpenSQL writes tracepoint information. The default file name is "iiprttrc.log". To enable this feature, use the set_sql printrtrace option.</p> <p>If a directory or path specification is omitted, the file is created in the current default directory.</p>

Update

SQL	ESQL
*	*

Updates column values in a table.

Syntax

Interactive version:

```
update tablename
    set columnname = expression {, columnname = expression}
    [where search_condition]
```

Embedded versions:

Non-cursor version:

```
exec sql [repeated] update tablename
    set column = expression {, column = expression}
    [where search_condition]
```

Cursor version:

```
exec sql update tablename
    set column = expression {, column = expression}
    where current of cursor_name
```

Description

The update statement replaces the values of the specified columns by the values of the specified expressions for all rows of the table that satisfy the *search_condition*. For a discussion of search conditions, refer to the “Elements of OpenSQL Statements” chapter.

The expressions in the set clause can use constants or expressions involving column values from the table being updated. The data type of the column must agree with the data type of the value being assigned to it. To place a null in a nullable column, use the null constant.

If an update to a row would violate an integrity constraint defined on the table, that row remains unchanged.

If a subselect is specified, the subselect must not select rows from the table in which you are updating rows.

Embedded Usage

Host language variables can only be used within expressions in the set clause and the *search_condition*. (Variables used in *search_conditions* must denote constant values and cannot represent names of database columns or include any operators.) A host string variable can be used to specify the complete search condition.

If the update did not update any rows, the *sqlcode* of the SQLCA is set to 100. If the update succeeded, the *sqlerrd*(3) of the SQLCA contains the number of rows updated by the statement.

To formulate the non-cursor update as a repeated query, specify the key word *repeated*. The repeated key word directs OpenSQL to encode the update and save its execution plan when the update is first executed. This encoding can improve the performance of subsequent executions of the same update. The repeated key word is available only for non-cursor updates, and is ignored if used with the cursor or dynamic versions.

If your statement includes a dynamically constructed *search_condition*, that is, if the complete *search_condition* is specified by a host string variable, do not use the repeated option if you intend to change the *search_condition* after the statement's initial execution. The saved execution plan is based on the initial value of the *search_condition* and any changes to *search_condition* would be ignored. This rule does not apply to simple variables used in *search_conditions*.

Cursor Updates

The cursor version of update is similar to the interactive update, except for the where clause. The where clause, required in the cursor update, specifies that the update occur to the row the cursor currently points to. If the cursor is not pointing to a row, as would be the case immediately after an open or delete statement, a run-time error message is generated indicating that a fetch must first be performed. If the row the cursor is pointing to has been deleted from the underlying database table (as the result, for example, of a non-cursor delete), no row is updated and the *sqlcode* is set to 100. Following a cursor update, the cursor continues to point to the same row.

Two cursor updates not separated by a fetch may cause the same row to be updated twice, or may cause an error, depending on the host DBMS.

In performing a cursor update, make sure that certain conditions are met:

- A cursor must be declared in the same file in which any update statement referencing that cursor appears. This applies also to any cursor referenced in a dynamic update statement string.

- A cursor name in a dynamic update statement must be unique among all open cursors in the current transaction.
- The cursor stipulated in the update must be open before the statement is executed.
- The update statement and the from clause in the cursor's declaration must refer to the same database table.
- The columns in the set clause must have been declared for update at the time the cursor was declared (refer to the declare cursor statement).
- Host language variables can be used only for the cursor names or for expressions in the set clause.

The commit and rollback statements close all open cursors. A common programming error is to update the current row of a cursor, commit the change, and then attempt to loop and repeat the process—the commit closes the cursor, and subsequent fetches will fail.

Examples

1. Give all employees who work for Smith a 10% raise.

```
update emp
set salary = 1.1 * salary
where dept in
(select dno
 from dept
 where mgr in
 (select eno
  from emp
  where ename like '%Smith'));
```

2. Set all salaried people who work for Smith to null.

```
update emp
set salary = null
where dept in
(select dno
 from dept
 where mgr in
 (select eno
  from emp
  where ename like '%Smith'));
```

Whenever

SQL	ESQL
	*

Performs an action when a specified condition becomes true.

Syntax

```
exec sql whenever condition action
```

Description

The whenever statement provides a convenient method for handling error and exception conditions arising from embedded OpenSQL database statements. It stipulates that some action occur when the program attains a specified condition. Variables in the SQLCA determine whether a condition is true. For this reason, an SQLCA must be included in your program before you issue the whenever statement.

Once a whenever has been declared, it remains in effect until another whenever is specified for the same condition. Since whenever is a declarative and not an executable statement, its physical location in the program's source code, rather than its sequence in the program's execution, determines its scope.

Whenever statements can be repeated for the same condition and can appear anywhere after the include sqlca statement.

The *condition* can be any of the following:

- **sqlwarning** - True when the sqlwarn0 variable of the SQLCA is set to "W," indicating that the last embedded OpenSQL database statement produced a warning condition.
- **sqlerror** - True when the sqlcode of the SQLCA is set to a negative value, indicating that an error occurred in the last embedded OpenSQL database statement.
- **not found** - True when the sqlcode is set to a value of 100, indicating that a select, fetch, update, delete, insert, copy, create index, or create as subselect statement affected no rows.

Action may be any of the following:

- **Continue** - No action will be taken when the condition occurs. The program proceeds with the next executable statement. If a fatal error occurs, an error message is printed and the program aborts.

- **Stop** - The program will display an error message and terminate when the condition occurs. If the program is connected to a database when the condition occurs, the program disconnects from the database without committing pending updates. The stop action cannot be specified for the not found condition.
- **Goto *label*** - Specifies a label in the program to which control is transferred when the condition occurs (same as a host language “go to” statement). The *label* (or paragraph name, in COBOL) must be specified using the rules of your host language. The key word goto can also be specified as go to.
- **Call *procedure*** - Specifies a host language procedure to be called (in COBOL, a paragraph to be performed) when the condition occurs. The *procedure* must be specified according to the conventions of the host language. No arguments can be passed to the procedure. To direct the program to print any error or warning message and continues with the next statement, specify call sqlprint. (The sqlprint routine is a procedure provided by OpenSQL, not a user-written procedure.)

If your program does not include an SQLCA (and therefore no whenever statements), OpenSQL displays all errors. If your program includes an SQLCA, OpenSQL continues execution (and does not display errors) for all conditions for which you do not issue a whenever statement. To override the continue default and direct OpenSQL to display errors and messages, set II_EMBED_SET to sqlprint.

The program’s condition is automatically checked after each embedded OpenSQL database statement. If one of the conditions has become true, the *action* specified for that condition is taken. If the *action* is goto, then the label must be within the scope of the statements affected by the whenever statement at compile time.

An *action* specified for a *condition* affects all subsequent embedded OpenSQL source statements until another whenever is encountered for that condition.

The embedded SQL preprocessor does not generate any code for the whenever statement. Therefore, in a language that does not allow empty control blocks, (for example, COBOL, which does not allow empty IF blocks), the whenever statement should not be the only statement in the block.

Be careful to avoid coding potentially infinite loops with whenever statements. Within a sequence of statements functioning as an error handling block for a particular condition, the first statement should be a whenever continue that turns off the action.

For example, consider the following program fragment:

```
exec sql whenever sqlerror goto error_label;
exec sql create table worktable
(workid integer2, workstats varchar(15));
...
```

```
process data;
...
error_label:
exec sql whenever sqlerror continue;
exec sql drop worktable;
exec sql disconnect;
...
```

If the error handling block did not specify continue for condition sqlerror and the drop statement caused an error, at run time the program would infinitely loop between the drop statement and the label, *error_label*.

Host language variables cannot be used in a whenever statement. This statement must be terminated according to the rules of your host language.

Examples

1. During program development, print all errors and continue with next statement.

```
exec sql whenever sqlerror call sqlprint;
```

2. During database cursor manipulation, close the cursor when no more rows are retrieved.

```
exec sql open cursor1;
exec sql whenever not found goto close_cursor;

loop until whenever not found is true
  exec sql fetch cursor1
    into :var1, :var2;
  print and process the results;
end loop;

close_cursor:
exec sql whenever not found continue;
exec sql close cursor1;
```

3. Stop program upon detecting an error or warning condition.

```
exec sql whenever sqlerror stop;
exec sql whenever sqlwarning stop;
```

4. Reset whenever actions to default within an error handling block.

```
error_handle:
exec sql whenever sqlerror continue;
exec sql whenever sqlwarning continue;
exec sql whenever not found continue;
...
  handle cleanup
...
```

5. Always confirm that the connect statement succeeded before continuing.

```
exec sql whenever sqlerror stop;
exec sql connect :dbname;
exec sql whenever sqlerror continue;
```

Extended Statements

This chapter lists statements and extensions that may be available in OpenSQL. To determine whether these statements and extensions are supported, check for the following row in the `iidbcapabilities` catalog:

CAP_CAPABILITIES	CAP_VALUE
SQL92_COMPLIANCE	ENTRY

If the statements and extensions are not supported, the `cap_value` column contains `NONE`. For more information about the `iidbcapabilities` catalog, refer to the “OpenSQL Standard Catalogs” chapter.

Create Schema

SQL	ESQL
*	*

Creates a named collection of database objects.

Syntax

```
[exec sql] create schema authorization schema_name
    [object_definition {object_definition}];
```

where *object_definition* is a create table, create view, or grant statement.

Description

The create schema statement creates a named collection of database objects (tables, views and privileges). The *schema_name* parameter must be the same as the effective user for the session issuing the create schema statement. All objects specified in the create schema statement are owned by that user. You cannot create a schema for another user. Each user has one schema per database.

The statements within the create schema statement must not be separated by semicolon delimiters. However, the create schema statement must be terminated with a semicolon following the last object definition statement (create table, create view, or grant).

If object definitions are omitted, an empty schema is created. For details about the statements used to create tables, views, and privileges, refer to the Create Table, Create View, and Grant statement descriptions in this chapter. If an error occurs within the create schema statement, the entire statement is rolled back. If you issue a create schema specifying an existing schema (*schema_name*), OpenSQL issues an error.

To add objects to your schema, issue the required create statements outside of a create schema statement. If no schema exists for your user identifier, one is implicitly created when you create any database object. Thereafter, if you issue a create schema statement, OpenSQL issues an error.

If, within a create schema statement, you create tables that have referential constraints, the order of create table statements is not significant. This is unlike the requirements for creating tables with referential constraints outside of a Create Schema statement, where the referenced table must exist before a constraint that references it can be created. For details about referential constraints, refer to the Create Table statement description.

Other users can reference objects in your schema if you have granted them the required permissions. To reference an object in a schema other than your own, specify the object name as follows:

schema.object

For example, user harry can select data from user joe's employees table (if joe has granted harry select permission). Harry can issue the following select statement:

```
select lname, fname from joe.employees
  where dname = 'accounting';
```

Restrictions

The following restrictions apply to create table statements within a create schema statement:

- Create table...as select cannot be used.
- A with clause cannot be specified.
- The following data types cannot be used:

```
integer2          float8
integer4          date
float4
```

The only valid with clause option for create view statements within a create schema statement is with check option.

Embedded Usage

Syntax elements cannot be replaced with host language variables.

Permissions

Any user can issue the create schema statement.

Example

Create a schema authorization containing tables, views, and privileges.

```
create schema authorization joe
create table employees(lname character(30) not null,
                      fname character(30) not null,
                      salary decimal,
                      dname character(10)
                      references dept(deptname),
                      primary key (lname, fname)

create table dept(deptname character(10)
                 not null unique,
                 budget decimal,
                 expenses decimal default 0)

create view mgr (mlname, mfname, mdname) as
select lname, fname, deptname from employees,dept
where dname = deptname

grant references(lname, fname)
on table employees to harry;
```

Create Table (extended)

SQL	ESQL
*	*

Creates a new base table.

Syntax

```
[exec sql] create table tablename
    [(column_specification {, column_specification}
    (column_specification {, column_specification }
    [, [constraint constraint_name] table_constraint
    {, [constraint constraint_name] table_constraint})]
    [with with_clause]
```

To create a table and load rows from another table:

```
[exec sql] create table tablename
    (column_name {, column_name}) as
    subselect
    {union [all]
    subselect}
    [with with_clause]
```

For the syntax of *subselect*, refer to the Select Statement description in this chapter.

The *with_clause* parameter consists of the word *with* followed by a comma-separated list of with clause options. For an overview of the with clause, refer to DBMS Extensions in the “OpenSQL Features” chapter.

The *column_specification* has the following syntax:

```
column_name datatype
[[with default default_spec | with default | not default]
[with null | not null]
[[constraint constraint_name] column_constraint
{ [constraint constraint_name] column_constraint}]
```

where *column_constraint* is one or more of the following:

```
unique [with constraint_with_clause]
primary key [with constraint_with_clause]
```

references [*schema.*]*table_name*[(*column_name*)]
[with *constraint_with_clause*]

Table constraints must be specified as one or more of the following:

unique (*column_name* {, *column_name*}) [with *constraint_with_clause*]

primary key (*column_name* {, *column_name*}) [with *constraint_with_clause*]

foreign key (*column_name* {, *column_name*})
references [*schema.*]*table_name* [(*column_name*
{, *column_name*})] [with *constraint_with_clause*]

Constraints are described in detail later in this statement description.

Description

The create table statement creates a new base table owned by the user who issues the statement. If you use the create table...as select syntax, the table that you create will contain a subset of the columns and values in existing tables specified by the *subselect*.

Tablename specifies the name of the new table, and must be a valid object name. For the rules for naming database objects, refer to Object Names in the “Overview of OpenSQL” chapter.

Column Specifications

The following characteristics of the new column can be specified:

- **Name** - A valid name must be assigned to each column.
- **Data type** - A valid data type must be assigned to each column. For details about valid data types, refer to Data Types in the “Overview of OpenSQL” chapter.

If create table...as select is specified, the new table takes its column names and formats from the results of the select clause of the subselect specified in the as clause (unless different column names are specified).

- **Nullability and defaults** - Specify:
 - whether a column will accept nulls
 - whether the column is mandatory
 - the value to be assigned if no value is specified by the user (the default value)

- **Constraints** - Specify checks to be performed on the contents of a column. When the table is updated, if the column fails the checks, OpenSQL issues an error and aborts the statement that attempted to insert the invalid value.

The following sections describe these characteristics in detail.

Column Defaults and Nullability

The following sections explain how to specify whether columns accept nulls and how default values are assigned to columns.

Default Values

To specify whether a column requires an entry (is mandatory), use the not default clause. If the column does not require an entry, specify a value to be inserted if none is provided by the user (a *default* value).

Valid options are:

- **Not default** - The column is mandatory.
- **Default** *default_spec* | **user** | **null** - OpenSQL inserts the specified value if the user or program does not specify a value for the column. The default value must be compatible with the data type of the column.

If the default clause is omitted, the column default depends on whether the column is nullable. Nullable columns default to nulls, and non-nullable columns are mandatory.

The following is an example of the default option:

```
create table dept( dname character(10),
                  budget decimal default 100000.00,
                  creation date default date('01/01/94'));
```

The following considerations and restrictions apply when specifying a default value for a column:

- The data type and length of the default value must not conflict with the data type and length of the column.
- The maximum length for a default value is 1500 characters or the declared length of the column, whichever is shorter.
- For fixed length string columns, if the column is wider than the default value, the default value is padded with blanks to the full width of the column.
- For numeric columns that accept fractional values (floating point and decimal), the decimal point character specified for the default value must match the decimal point character in effect when the value is inserted. To specify the decimal point character, set `II_DECIMAL`.

- For date columns, the default value must be a valid date specified using the `date()` function. If the time zone is omitted, the time zone defaults to the time zone of the user inserting the row.
- User (meaning the session's current user ID) can be specified as the default value or, for nullable columns, null.

Nullability

To specify whether a column accepts null values, specify the `with | not null` clause:

- **With null** - The column accepts nulls. OpenSQL inserts null as the default value if no value is supplied by the user. If the `with | not null` clause is omitted, the column is created with null.
- **Not null** - The column does not accept nulls. If the default clause is omitted or not default is specified, the column is mandatory.

The `with | not null` clause works in combination with the `with | not default` clause, as shown in the following table:

Nullability and Default Specification	Result
with null	The column accepts nulls. If no value is provided, a null is inserted.
not null	The column is mandatory and does not accept nulls. Typical for primary key columns.
with null default	The column accepts null values. If no value is provided, the default value is inserted.
with null not default	The column accepts null values. The user must provide a value (mandatory column).
not null default	The column does not accept nulls. If no value is provided, the default value is inserted. (The specified default value cannot be null.)
not null not default	The column is mandatory and does not accept nulls. Typical for primary key columns.

Constraints

To ensure that the contents of columns fulfills your database requirements, specify *constraints*. The types of constraints are:

- **Unique constraints** - Ensures that a value appears in a column only once. Unique constraints are specified using the unique option.
- **Check constraints** - Ensures that the contents of a column fulfills user-specified criteria (for example, "salary >0"). Check constraints are specified using the check option.
- **Referential constraints** - Ensures that a value assigned to a column appears in a corresponding column in another table. Referential constraints are specified using the references option.
- **Primary key constraints** - Declares one or more columns for use in referential constraints in other tables.

Constraints are checked at the end of every statement that modifies the table. If the constraint is violated, OpenSQL returns an error and aborts the statement. If the statement is within a multi-statement transaction, the transaction is not aborted.

Note: Constraints are not checked when adding rows to a table using the copy statement.

Each type of constraint is described in detail in the following sections. Constraints can be specified for individual columns or for the entire table. For details, refer to Column-Level Constraints versus Table-Level Constraints in this chapter.

The Unique Constraint To ensure that no two rows have the same value in a particular column or set of columns, specify not null unique. (If you specify a column as unique, you must also specify not null.) The following is an example of a column-level unique constraint:

```
create table dept (dname character(10)
  not null unique, ...);
```

In the preceding example, the unique constraint ensures that no two departments have the same name.

To ensure that the data in a group of columns is unique, the unique constraint must be specified at the table level (rather than specifying unique constraints for individual columns). A maximum of 32 columns can be specified in a table-level unique constraint.

The following is an example of a table-level unique constraint:

```
create table depts (dname character(10) not null,
  dlocation character(10) not null,
  unique (dname, dlocation));
```

In the preceding example, the unique constraint ensures that no two departments in the same location have the same name. Note that the columns are declared not null, as required by the unique constraint.

Any column or set of columns that is designated as the primary key is implicitly unique and not null. A table can have only one primary key, but can have any number of unique constraints.

Note: Unique constraints may create system indexes that cannot be explicitly dropped by the table owner. These indexes are used to enforce the unique constraint.

The Check Constraint To create conditions that a particular column or set of columns must fulfill, specify a check constraint using the check option. For example, to ensure that salaries are positive numbers:

```
create table emps (name character(25), sal decimal
check (sal > 0));
```

The expression specified in the check constraint must be a Boolean expression. For details about expressions, refer to Expressions in the “Elements of OpenSQL Statements” chapter.

To specify a check constraint for a group of columns, the check constraint must be specified at the table level (rather than specifying check constraints for individual columns). The following is an example of a table-level check constraint:

```
create table dept (dname character(10),
location character(10),
budget decimal,
expenses decimal,
check (budget > 0 and expenses <= budget));
```

The preceding example ensures that each department has a budget and that expenses do not exceed the budget.

Check constraints cannot include the following:

- Subqueries
- Set functions (aggregate functions)
- Dynamic parameters
- Host language variables

Column-level check constraints cannot refer to other columns.

The Referential Constraint

To validate an entry against the contents of a column in another table (or another column in the same table), specify a referential constraint using the references option. The references option maintains the referential integrity of your tables.

The column-level referential constraint uses the following syntax:

```
references [schema.] table_name (column_name)[referential actions]  
[constraint_with_clause]
```

The following is an example of a column-level referential constraint:

```
create table emp (ename char(10),  
                 dept char(10) references dept(dname));
```

In the preceding example, the referential constraint ensures that no employee is assigned to a department that is not present in the dept table.

The table-level referential constraint uses the following syntax, including the foreign key... references option:

```
foreign key (column_i{,column_name})  
  references [schema.] table_name [(i_name{,column_name})][referential actions]  
  [constraint_with_clause]
```

The following is an example of a table-level referential constraint:

```
create table mgr (name char(10),  
                 empno char(5),  
                 ...  
                 foreign key (name, empno) references emp);
```

The preceding example verifies the contents of the name and empno columns against the corresponding columns in the emp table to ensure that anyone entered into the table of managers is on file as an employee. This example omits the names of the referenced column. The emp table must have a primary key constraint that specifies the corresponding name and employee number columns.

Referential actions allow the definition of alternate processing options in the event a referenced row is deleted, or referenced columns are updated when there are existing matching rows. A referential action specifies either an *update rule* or a *delete rule*, or both, in either sequence.

The on update and on delete rules, use the following syntax:

```
on update {cascade | set null | restrict | no action}
```

or

```
on delete {cascade | set null | restrict | no action}
```

The “on update cascade” causes the values of the updated referenced column(s) to be propagated to the referencing columns of the matching rows of the referencing table.

The “on delete cascade” specifies that if a delete is attempted on a referenced row that has matching referencing rows, the delete is “cascaded” to the referencing table as well. That is, the matching referencing rows are also deleted. If the referencing table is itself a referenced table in some other referential relationship, the delete rule for that relationship is applied, and so forth. (Since rule types can be mixed in a referential relationship hierarchy, the second delete rule may be different from the first delete rule.) If an error occurs somewhere down the line in a cascaded operation, the original delete fails, and no update is performed.

In addition to cascade, the no action, set null, and restrict actions are also supported for both delete and update.

- *No action* is the default behavior of returning an error upon any attempt to delete or update a referenced row with matching referencing rows.
- *Restrict* is similar to no action, with a minor variation; it behaves identically, but returns a different error code. Both options are supported for ANSI SQL compliance.
- *Set null* causes the referencing column(s) of the matching rows to be set to the null value (signifying that they do not currently participate in the referential relationship). The column(s) can be updated later to a non-null value(s), at which time the resulting row must find a match somewhere in the referenced table.

The following is example of the delete and update rules:

```
create table employee (empl_no int not null),
  emp_name char(20) not null,
  dept_id char(6) references department (dept_id)
    on delete cascade on update cascade,
  mgrno int references employee (empl_no) on update
  cascade
    on delete set null);
```

If a department row is deleted, all employees in that department are also deleted. If a department ID is changed in the department table, it is also changed in all referencing employee rows.

If a manager's ID is changed, his employees are changed to match. If the manager is fired, all his employees have mgr_id set to null.

The following considerations apply to the table and column being referenced (the column specified following the keyword, references):

- The referenced table must be an existing base table (it cannot be a view).
- The data types of the columns must be comparable.
- You must have references privilege for the referenced columns. For details, refer to the Grant statement description in this chapter.
- If the table and column names are specified, the referenced columns must compose a unique or primary key constraint for the referenced table.

- If multiple columns in a table-level referential constraint are specified, the columns specified for the referencing table must correspond in number, data type, and position to the columns specified for the referenced table, and they must compose a unique or primary key constraint for the referenced table.
- If the referenced table is specified and the column name is omitted, the referenced table must have a primary key constraint. The referencing columns are verified against the referenced table's primary key.

The Primary Key Constraint

The primary key constraint is used to denote one or more columns to which other tables will refer in referential constraints. A table can have only one primary key; the primary key for a table is implicitly unique and must be declared not null.

The following is an example of a primary key constraint and a related referential constraint:

Referenced table:

```
create table partnumbers(partno int primary key...);
```

Referencing table:

```
create table inventory(ipartno int...
    foreign key (ipartno) references (partnumbers));
```

In this case, the part numbers in the inventory table are checked against those in the partnumbers table; the referential constraint for the inventory table is a table-level constraint and therefore must specify the foreign key clause. The referential constraint for the inventory does not specify the column that is referenced in the partnumbers table. By default, the DBMS checks the column declared as the primary key. For related details, refer to the References Constraint section.

Using "Create table...as Select"

The create table...as select syntax allows you to create a table from another table or tables. (The create table...as select syntax is an OpenSQL extension, and is not part of the ANSI/ISO Entry SQL-92 standard.) The new table is populated with the set of rows resulting from execution of the specified select statement.

By default, the columns of the new table have the same names as the corresponding columns of the base table from which you are selecting data. Different names can be specified for the new columns.

The data types of the new columns are the same as the data types of the source columns. The nullability of the new columns is determined as follows:

- If a source table column is nullable, then the column in the new table is nullable.

- If a source table column is not nullable, then the column in the new table is defined as not null.

If the source column has a default value defined, the column in the new table retains the default definition. However, if the default value in the source column is defined using an expression, the default value for the result column is unknown and its nullability depends on the source columns used in the expression. If all the source columns in the expression are not nullable, the result column is not nullable. If any of the source columns are nullable, the result column is nullable.

A system-maintained logical key column cannot be created using the create table...as select syntax. When creating a table using create table...as select, any logical key columns in the source table that are reproduced in the new table are assigned the format of not system_maintained.

Embedded Usage

- Host language variables can be used to specify constant expressions in the *subselect* of a create table...as statement.
- *Locationname* can be specified using a host language string variable.
- The preprocessor does not validate the syntax of the *with_clause*.

Permissions

This statement is available to all users.

Examples

1. Create the employee table with columns eno, ename, age, job, salary, and dept.

```
create table employee
(eno    smallint,
 ename  varchar(20) not null,
 age    smallint,
 job    smallint,
 salary float4,
 dept   smallint);
```

2. Create a table listing employee numbers for employees who make more than the average salary.

```
create table highincome as
select eno
from employee
where salary >
(select avg (salary)
 from employee);
```

3. Create a table specifying defaults.

```
create table dept
( dname      char(10)
  location    char(10) default 'LA'
  creation_date date default date('1/1/93'));
```

4. Create a table specifying referential constraints. When a department number is assigned to an employee, it will be checked against the entries in the dept table.

```
create table emps (
empno  char(5),
deptno char(5) references dept),
...);
```

5. Create a table specifying check constraints. In this example, department budgets default to \$100,000, expenses to \$0. The check constraint insures that expenses do not exceed the budget.

```
create table dept (
dname  char(10),
budget decimal default 100000,
expenses decimal default 0,
check  (budget >= expenses));
```

6. Create a table specifying unique constraints and keys.

```
create table dept (
deptno  char(5) primary key,
dname   char(10) not null,
dlocation char(10) not null,
unique (dname, dlocation));
```

7. Create a table specifying null constraints.

```
create table emp (
salary  decimal not default with null ,
hiredate date not default with null,
sickdays float default 5.0 with null );
```

8. Unique constraint uses base table structure, not a generated index:

```
alter table department add primary key (dept_id)
with index = base table structure;
```

9. Unique constraint generates index in non-default location. First referential constraint generates no index at all:

```
create table employee (empl_no int not null
unique with location = (ixloc1),
emp_name char(20) not null,
dept_id char(6) references department (dept_id) with no index,
mgrno int references employee (empl_no));
```

10. Referential and primary key constraints share the same named index:

```
create table assignment (empl_no int not null
  references employee (empl_no) with (index = assnpkix,
  location = (ixloc2)),
  proj_id int not null references project (proj_id),
  task char(20),
  primary key (empl_no, proj_id) with index =
  assnpkix);
```

11. Referential action:

```
create table employee (empl_no int not null
  unique with location = (ixloc1),
  emp_name char(20) not null,
  dept_id char(6) references department (dept_id)
  on delete cascade on update cascade with no index,
  mgrno int references employee (empl_no) on update cascade
  on delete set null);
```

Grant

SQL	ESQL
*	*

Grants privileges on the database as a whole or on individual tables, views, or procedures.

Syntax

```
[exec sql] grant all [privileges] | privilege {, privilege}
  on [table] [schema.]table_name
  to public | auth_id {, auth_id}
  [with grant option];
```

Description

The grant statement enables a DBA or user to control access to tables. To remove privileges, use the revoke statement. The following table describes the grant statement parameters.

Parameter	Description
<i>table_name</i>	Name of the table for which the privilege is being defined.
<i>auth_id</i>	The name of the users to which you are granting privileges.

By default, neither the public nor any user has any table privileges. Table privileges must be granted explicitly. Valid table privileges are:

- Select
- Insert
- Update

For update, a list of columns can optionally be specified; if the column list is omitted, update privilege is granted to all updateable columns of the table or view.

- **Delete**
- **References** - The references privilege enables specified users to create referential constraints that reference the specified tables and columns. For details about referential constraints, refer to the Create Table statement description in this chapter.

A list of columns can optionally be specified. If the column list is omitted, references privilege is granted to all updateable columns of the table. You cannot grant the references privilege on a view.

- **All [privileges]** - All grants select, insert, update, delete, and references on the specified objects to the specified users.

The Grant All Privileges Option

To grant a privilege on an object you do not own, you must have been granted the privilege with grant option—only the privileges for which you have grant option are granted.

The results of granting all privileges on a view you do not own are determined as follows:

- **Select** - Granted if you can grant select privilege on all tables and views in the view definition.
- **Update** - Granted for all columns for which you can grant update privilege; if you were granted update...with grant option on a subset of the columns of a table, update is granted only for those columns.
- **Insert** - Granted if you can grant insert privilege on all tables and views in the view definition.
- **Delete** - Granted if you can grant delete privilege on all tables and views in the view definition.
- **References** - The references privilege is not valid for views.

The following example illustrates the results of the `grant all privileges` option. The `accounting_mgr` user creates the following employee table:

```
create table employee (name character(25),  
    department character(5), salary decimal)...
```

and, using the following grant statement, grants the `accounting_supervisor` user the ability to select all columns but only allows `accounting_supervisor` to update the department column (to prevent unauthorized changes of the salary column):

```
grant select, update (department) on table employees  
    to accounting_supervisor with grant option;
```

If the `accounting_supervisor` user issues the following grant statement:

```
grant all privileges on table employees to  
    accounting_clerk;
```

the `accounting_clerk` user receives `select` and `update(department)` privileges.

The Grant Option

To enable a user to grant a privilege to another user, specify the `with grant option` clause.

For example, if user, `tony`, creates a table called, `mytable`, and issues the following statement:

```
grant select on tony.mytable to laura  
    with grant option;
```

user `laura`, can select data from `tony.mytable`, and can authorize user, `evan`, to select data from `tony.mytable` by issuing the following statement:

```
grant select on tony.mytable to evan;
```

Because `laura` did not specify the `with grant option` clause, `evan` cannot authorize another user to select data from `tony.mytable`.

The owner of an object can grant any privilege to any user (or to public). The user to whom the privilege is granted with `grant option` can grant only the specified privilege. In the preceding example, `laura` can grant `select` privilege, but cannot grant, for example, `insert` privilege.

In the previous example, the second grant (to `evan`) depends upon the first grant (to `laura`). If `tony` revokes `select` permission from `laura` (using the `revoke` statement), `tony` must specify how `OpenSQL` should handle dependent grants that `laura` has issued. The choices are:

- **Revoke with cascade** - Revokes all dependent grants; in the preceding example, `select` permission will be revoked from user, `evan`.

- **Revoke with restrict** - Do not revoke specified grant if there are dependent grants. In the preceding example, select permission will not be revoked from laura because her grant to evan depends on the grant she received from tony.

Embedded Usage

Specify the with clause using a host string variable (with *:hostvar*).

Permissions

To grant privileges on an object, you must own the object or have the grant option for the privilege you are granting.

Examples

1. Grant update privileges on the columns, empname and empaddress, in the employee table to the users, joank and gerryr.

```
grant update(empname, empaddress)
  on table employee
  to joank, gerryr;
```
2. Enable any user to select data from the employee roster.

```
grant select on emp_roster to public;
```
3. Enable the accounting manager, rickr, complete access to salary information and to grant permissions to other user.

```
grant all on employee to rickr with grant option;
```
4. Enable any user to create a table constraint that references the employee roster.

```
grant references on emp_roster to public;
```

Revoke

SQL	ESQL
*	*

Revokes database privileges.

Syntax

```
[exec sql] revoke [grant option for]
    all [privileges] | privilege {, privilege}
    on [table] [schema.]table_name
    from public | auth_id{, auth_id}
    [cascade | restrict];
```

Description

The revoke statement removes database privileges granted to the specified users or public. (To confer privileges, use the grant statement.) You cannot revoke privileges granted by other users.

The following table lists the valid parameters for this statement.

Parameter	Description
<i>privilege</i>	Specifies the privilege you want to revoke. (To revoke all privileges for the object, specify all.) The privilege must be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Select ■ Update ■ Insert ■ Delete ■ References
<i>table_name</i>	The name of the table on which the privileges were granted.
<i>auth_id</i>	Specifies the authorization identifier from which privileges are being revoked.

For more information about privileges, refer to the Grant statement description in this chapter.

Revoking the Grant Option

The grant statement grant option enables users other than the owner of an object to grant privileges on that object. For example:

```
grant select on employee_roster to mike with grant
option;
```

enables mike to grant the select privilege (with or without grant option) to other users.

The grant option can be revoked without revoking the privilege with which it was granted. For example:

```
revoke grant option for select on employees to  
mike...
```

means that mike can still select data from the employees table, but cannot grant the select privilege to other users.

Restrict versus Cascade

The restrict and cascade options specify how OpenSQL handles dependent privileges. The cascade option (default) directs OpenSQL to revoke the specified privileges plus all privileges that depend on the privileges being revoked. The restrict option directs OpenSQL not to revoke the specified privilege if there are any dependent privileges.

The owner of an object can grant privileges on that object to any user. Privileges granted by users who do not own the object are dependent on the privileges granted with grant option by the owner. For example, if user, jerry, owns the employees table, he can grant tom the ability to select data from the table and to enable other users to select data from the table:

```
grant select on employees to tom with grant option;
```

User tom can now enable another user to select data from the employees table:

```
grant select on employees to sylvester with grant  
option;
```

The grant tom conferred on sylvester is dependent on the grant the table's owner jerry conferred on tom. In addition, sylvester can enable other users to select data from the employees table.

- To remove his grant to tom and all grants tom may have issued, jerry must specify revoke...cascade:

```
revoke select on employees from tom cascade;
```

As a result of this statement, the select privilege granted by tom to sylvester is revoked, as are any select grants issued by sylvester to other users conferring select privilege for the employees table.

- To prevent dependent privileges from being revoked, jerry must specify revoke... restrict:

```
revoke select on employees from tom restrict;
```

Because there are dependent privileges (tom has granted select privilege on the employees table to sylvester), this revoke statement will fail, and no privileges will be revoked.

The restrict and cascade parameters have the same effect whether you are revoking a specific privilege or the grant option for a specific privilege. In either case, restrict prevents the operation from occurring if there are dependent privileges, and cascade causes dependent privileges to be deleted. When you revoke a grant option with cascade, all dependent privileges are revoked, not just the grant option portion of the dependent privileges.

Embedded Usage

Any portion of the syntax cannot be replaced with host language variables.

Permissions

Any user can issue the revoke statement.

Example

Prevent any user from granting any form of access to the payroll table. Delete all dependent grants.

```
revoke grant option for all on payroll
from public cascade;
```

Select

SQL	ESQL
*	

Retrieves values from one or more tables or views.

Syntax

```
select [all | distinct] * | result_expression {, result_expression}  
  from from_source {, from_source}  
  [where search_condition]  
  [group by column {, column}]  
  [having search_condition]  
  {union [all] (select)}  
  [order by result_column [asc | desc]  
    {, result_column [asc | desc]}];
```

where *result_expression* is one of the following:

- *[schema.]tablename.** (to select all columns)
- *[[schema.]tablename.]columnname* [**as** *result_column*]
(to select one column)
- *expression* [**as**] *result_column*

For SQL-92 compliant installations, the **as** keyword in the result expression is optional. All other select syntax and semantics are documented in the “OpenSQL Statements” chapter.

OpenSQL Standard Catalogs

This chapter describes the Standard Catalog Interface catalogs. The Standard Catalog Interface described here corresponds to the formats you will find when the `iidbcapabilities` catalog contains the following values:

CAP_CAPABILITY	CAP_VALUE
STANDARD_CATALOG_LEVEL	805

The Standard Catalog Interface is a group of tables and views defined on the system catalogs of the underlying DBMS. Users who need to query the system catalogs must use the Standard Catalog Interface.

Unless otherwise noted, values in system catalogs are left-justified, and columns are non-nullable.

The length of char fields, as listed in the Data Type column, is a maximum length. The actual length of the field is installation-dependent. When developing applications that access these catalogs, allocate storage based on the length as shown in the Data Type column.

All dates stored in system catalogs have the following format (underscores and colons are required):

yyyy_mm_dd hh:mm:ss GMT (Greenwich Mean Time)

Standard Catalog Interface

The Standard Catalog Interface catalogs are read-only views built on system catalogs of the underlying DBMS. The Standard Catalog Interface provides a portable representation for information about OpenSQL.

The iidbcapabilities Catalog

The iidbcapabilities catalog contains information about the capabilities provided by the EDBC product or DBMS. The following table describes the columns in the iidbcapabilities catalog:

Column Name	Data Type	Description
cap_capability	char(32)	Contains one of the values listed in the capability column of the following table.
cap_value	char(32)	The contents of this field depend on the capability. Refer to the Values column in the following table.

The CAP_CAPABILITY
Column

The cap_capability column in the iidbcapabilities catalog contains one or more of the following values:

Capability	Value
CAP_SLAVE2PC	Indicates if the DBMS supports Ingres 2-phase commit slave protocol: Version 6.3 and above: Y STAR: Y EDBC product: usually N
OPEN/SQL_LEVEL	Version of OpenSQL supported by the DBMS. Examples: 00600 Version 6.0 00601 Version 6.1 00602 Version 6.2 00603 Version 6.3 00604 Version 6.4 00605 Version OpenIngres 1.x 00800 Version OpenIngres 2.0 and Ingres II 2.0 00850 Version Ingres II 2.5 Default is 00600.

Capability	Value
DB_NAME_CASE	Case sensitivity of the database with respect to database object names: LOWER, UPPER, MIXED. Defaults to LOWER. If the value is MIXED, case must be carefully preserved when specifying database objects. This field applies to names of database objects (tables, views, columns, and owners.) Names of user interface objects (such as forms or reports) are always lower case.
DB_DELIMITED_CASE	Case conversion performed by the DBMS for object names specified using delimited identifiers (that is, in double quotes). LOWER if delimited identifiers are translated to lower case, UPPER if delimited identifiers are translated to upper case, or MIXED if no case translation is performed.
DBMS_TYPE	The type of DBMS with which the application is communicating. Valid values are the same as those accepted by the with dbms clause used in queries. Examples: VSAM, DB2, or IMS.
DISTRIBUTED	Y if the DBMS is distributed, N if not.
ESCAPE	Contains Y if DBMS supports the ESCAPE clause of the LIKE predicate in the WHERE clause of search statements. Contains N if ESCAPE is not supported.
INGRES	Set to Y if the DBMS supports all versions of Ingres Release 6 and Ingres Release 1; otherwise N. Default is Y.
SQL92_COMPLIANCE	Contains ENTRY if the DBMS is SQL-92 Entry-level compliant, or NONE if the DBMS is not SQL-92 Entry-level compliant.

Capability	Value
INGRES/SQL_LEVEL	Version of Ingres/SQL supported by the DBMS. Examples: 00600 Version 6.0 00601 Version 6.1 00602 Version 6.2 00603 Version 6.3 00604 Version 6.4 00605 Version OpenIngres 1.x 00800 Version OpenIngres 2.0 and Ingres II 2.0 00850 Version Ingres II 2.5 00000 DBMS does not support Ingres/SQL Default is 00000.
INGRES_AUTH_GROUP	Y if the DBMS supports group identifiers.
INGRES_AUTH_ROLE	Y if the DBMS supports role identifiers.
INGRES_LOGICAL_KEY	Y if the DBMS supports Ingres logical keys.
INGRES_RULES	Y if the DBMS supports Ingres rules; N if it does not.
INGRES_UDT	Y if the DBMS supports Ingres user-defined data types, N if the DBMS does not support user-defined data types.
MAX_COLUMNS	Maximum number of columns allowed in a table. Default is 127.
OPEN_SQL_DATES	Contains LEVEL 1 if the EDBC product supports the OpenSQL date data type.
OWNER_NAME	Contains N if <i>owner.table</i> table name format not supported. Contains Y if <i>owner.table</i> format supported. Contains QUOTED if <i>owner.table</i> supported with optional quotes (" <i>owner</i> ". <i>table</i>).
PHYSICAL_SOURCE	T indicates that both <i>iitables</i> and <i>iipphysical_tables</i> contain physical table information. P indicates that only <i>iipphysical_tables</i> contains the physical table information.
SAVEPOINTS	Y if savepoints behave exactly as in Ingres, else N. Default is Y.

Capability	Value
STANDARD_CATALOG_LEVEL	Version of the standard catalog interface supported by this database. Valid values: 00602 00604 00605 00800 00850 (default)
UNIQUE_KEY_REQ	Set to Y if the database service requires that some or all tables have a unique key. Set to N or not present if the database service allows tables without unique keys.

The iidbconstants Catalog

The iidbconstants catalog contains values required by the ODBC-compliant application development tools. The following table describes the columns in the iidbconstants catalog:

Column Name	Data Type	Description
user_name	char(32)	Name of the current user.
dba_name	char(32)	Name of the owner of the database.
system_owner	char(32)	The name of the system catalog owner.

The iitables Catalog

The iitables catalog contains an entry for each queryable object in the database (table, view, or index). To find out what tables, views, and indexes are owned by you or the DBA, you can query this catalog. For example:

```
select * from iitables where (table_owner = user or
table_owner = (select dba_name from iidbconstants))
```

Column Name	Data Type	Description
table_name	char(32)	The object's name. Must be a valid object name.
table_owner	char(32)	The owner's user name. Generally, the creator of the object is the owner.

Column Name	Data Type	Description
create_date	char(25)	The object's creation date. Blank if unknown.
alter_date	char(25)	The last time this table was altered. This date is updated whenever the logical structure of the table changes, either through changes to the columns in the table or changes to the primary key. Physical changes to the table, such as changes to data, secondary indexes, or physical keys, do not change this date. Blank if unknown.
table_type	char(8)	Type of query object: T = Table V = View I = Index Further information about tables can be found in <code>iiphsical_tables</code> . Further information about views can be found in <code>iiviews</code> .
table_subtype	char(8)	Specifies the type of table or view. Possible values are: N (native) - For standard Ingres databases. L (links) - For STAR. I (imported tables) - For EDBC products. (blank) - If unknown
table_version	char(8)	Version of the object. Enables the user interfaces to determine where additional information about this particular object is stored. This reflects the database type, as well as the version of an object within a given database.

Column Name	Data Type	Description
system_use	char(8)	<p>Contains S if the object is a system object, U if user object, or blank if unknown.</p> <p>Used by utilities to determine which tables need reloading.</p> <p>If the value is unknown, the utilities use the naming convention of “ii” for tables to distinguish between system and user catalogs. In addition, any table beginning with ii_ is assumed to be a user interface object, rather than a DBMS system object. The standard system catalogs themselves must be included in the iitables catalog and are considered system tables.</p>
table_size	integer	Stores the page size of a table.

The following columns in iitables have values only if table_type is T or I. EDBC products that do not supply this information set these columns to -1 for numeric data types, blank for character data types.

Column Name	Data Type	Description
table_stats	char(8)	Contains Y if this object has entries in the iistats table, N if this object does not have entries. If this field is blank, then query iistats to determine if statistics exist.
table_indexes	char(8)	Contains Y if this object has entries in the iiindexes table that refer to this as a base table, or N if this object does not have entries. If the field is blank, then query iiindexes on the base_table column.
is_compressed	char(8)	Contains Y if the table is stored in compressed format, N if the table is uncompressed, blank if unknown.
key_is_compressed	char(8)	Contains Y if the table uses key compression, N if no key compression, or blank if unknown.

Column Name	Data Type	Description
is_readonly	char(8)	<p>Contains one of these values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ N - If updates are physically allowed■ Y - If no updates are allowed■ Blank - If unknown <p>Used for tables that are defined to the EDBC product only for retrieval, such as tables in hierarchical database systems.</p> <p>If this field is set to Y, then no updates will work, independent of what permissions might be set. If it is set to N, updates may be allowed, depending on whether the permissions allow it.</p>
concurrent_access	char(1)	Y if concurrent access is allowed.
num_rows	integer	The estimated number of rows in the table. Set to -1 if unknown.
storage_structure	char(16)	The storage structure for the table: heap, hash, btree, or isam. Blank if unknown.
duplicate_rows	char(8)	<p>Contains one of these values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ D - If the table allows duplicate rows.■ U - If the table does not allow duplicate rows.■ Blank - If unknown. <p>The table storage structure (unique or non-unique keys) can override this setting.</p>
unique_rule	char(8)	<p>Contains one of the following values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ D - Indicates that duplicate physical storage structure keys are allowed. (A unique alternate key may exist in <code>iialt_columns</code> and any storage structure keys may be listed in <code>iicolumns</code>.)■ U - If the object is an ISM or VSAM object, indicates that the object has unique storage structure key. If the object is not an ISM or VSAM object, then it indicates that the object has a unique key, described in either <code>iicolumns</code> or <code>iialt_columns</code>.■ Blank - If uniqueness is unknown or does not apply.

Column Name	Data Type	Description
number_pages	integer	The estimated number of physical pages in the table. Set to -1 if unknown.
overflow_pages	integer	The estimated number of overflow pages in the table. Set to -1 if unknown.
row_width	integer	The size, in bytes, of the uncompressed binary value for a row of this query object.
unique_scope	char(8)	R if this object is row-level, S if statement-level blank if not applicable.
allocation_size	integer	The allocation size, in pages. Set to -1 if unknown.
extend_size	integer	The extend size, in pages. Set to -1 if unknown.
allocated_pages	integer	The total number of pages allocated to the table.

If an EDBC product does not supply the following information, the EDBC product will set these columns to the default values: -1 for numeric columns and a blank for character columns. The information in the following section is not duplicated in `iipphysical_tables`.

Column Name	Data Type	Description
expire_date	integer	Expiration date of table.
modify_date	char(25)	The date on which the last physical modification to the storage structure of the table occurred. Blank if unknown or inapplicable.
location_name	char(24)	The first location of the table. If there are additional locations for a table, they are shown in the <code>iimulti_locations</code> table and <code>multi_locations</code> is set to Y.
table_integrities	char(8)	Contains Y if this object has Ingres style integrities. If the value is blank, query the <code>iiintegrities</code> table to determine if integrities exist.
table_permits	char(8)	Contains Y if this object has Ingres style permissions.
all_to_all	char(8)	Contains Y if this object has Ingres permit all to all, N if not.

Column Name	Data Type	Description
ret_to_all	char(8)	Contains Y if this object has Ingres permit retrieve to all, N if not.
is_journalled	char(8)	Contains Y if Ingres journaling is enabled on this object, N if not.
view_base	char(8)	Contains Y if object is a base for a view definition, N if not, or blank if unknown.
multi_locations	char(8)	Contains Y if the table is in multiple locations, N if not.
table_ifillpct	smallint	Fill factor for the index pages used on the last modify command in the nonleaffill clause, expressed as a percentage (0 to 100).
table_dfillpct	smallint	Fill factor for the data pages used on the last modify command in the fillfactor clause, expressed as a percentage (0 to 100).
table_lfillpct	smallint	Fill factor for the leaf pages used on the last modify command in the leaffill clause, expressed as a percentage (0 to 100).
table_minpages	integer	Minpages parameter from the last execution of the modify command.
table_maxpages	integer	Maxpages parameter from the last execution of the modify command.
table_relstamp1	integer	High part of last create or modify timestamp for the table.
table_relstamp2	integer	Low part of last create or modify timestamp for the table.
table_reltid	integer	The first part of the internal relation ID.
table_reltidx	integer	The second part of the internal relation ID.
table_relversion	integer	Stores the version of table.
table_reltotwidth	integer	This width includes all deleted columns.
table_reltpri	integer	Indicates a table's priority in the buffer cache. Values can be between 0 and 9. Zero is the default, and 1–9 can be specified using the priority clause in create table or modify table.

The iicolumns Catalog

For each queryable object in the itables catalog, there are one or more entries in the iicolumns catalog. Each row in iicolumns contains the logical information on a column of the object. User interfaces and user programs use the iicolumns catalog to perform dictionary operations and dynamic queries.

Column Name	Data Type	Description
table_name	char(32)	The name of the table.
table_owner	char(32)	The owner of the table.
column_name	char(32)	The column name.
column_length	integer	The length of the column returned to users and applications. If a data type contains two length specifiers, this column uses the first length. Set to zero for the data types that are specified without length (date). This length is not the actual length of the column's internal storage. For decimal columns, contains the precision.
column_datatype	char(32)	The column data type name returned to users and applications: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Decimal ■ Integer ■ Smallint ■ Int ■ Float ■ Real ■ Double precision ■ Char ■ Character ■ Varchar ■ Date
column_scale	integer	The second number in a two-part user length specification. For typename (len1, len2) it will be len2.

Column Name	Data Type	Description												
column_nulls	char(8)	Contains Y if the column can contain null values, N if the column cannot contain null values.												
column_defaults	char(8)	Contains Y if the column is given a default value when a row is inserted, or N if the column is not given a default value.												
column_sequence	integer	The number of this column in the corresponding table's create statement, numbered from 1.												
key_sequence	integer	The order of this column in the primary key, numbered from 1. If 0, then this column is not part of the primary key.												
sort_direction	char(8)	Defaults to A (for ascending) when key_sequence is greater than 0; otherwise, this value is a blank.												
column_ingdatatype	smallint	<p>Contains the numeric Ingres representation of the column's external data type (the data type returned to users and applications).</p> <p>If the installation has user-defined datatypes (UDTs), this column contains the data type that the UDT is converted to when returned to an Ingres user interface product.</p> <p>If the value is positive then the column is not nullable. If the value is negative, then the column is nullable. The data types and their corresponding values are:</p> <table><tbody><tr><td>Decimal</td><td>-10/10</td></tr><tr><td>integer</td><td>-30/30</td></tr><tr><td>float</td><td>-31/31</td></tr><tr><td>date*</td><td>-3/3</td></tr><tr><td>char</td><td>-20/20</td></tr><tr><td>varchar</td><td>-21/21</td></tr></tbody></table> <p>* Returned as a string</p>	Decimal	-10/10	integer	-30/30	float	-31/31	date*	-3/3	char	-20/20	varchar	-21/21
Decimal	-10/10													
integer	-30/30													
float	-31/31													
date*	-3/3													
char	-20/20													
varchar	-21/21													

Column Name	Data Type	Description
column_internal_datatype	char(32)	The internal data type of the column: char, c, varchar, text, integer, float, date, money, table_key, object_key. If the installation has user-defined data types, this column contains the user-specified name.
column_internal_length	smallint	The internal length of the column. For example, for data type smallint, this column contains 2. Contains 0 if the data type is fixed-length. The length does not include the null indicator byte for nullable columns, or the length specifier byte for varchar and text columns.
column_internal_ingtype	smallint	Contains the numeric representation of the internal datatype. See column_ingdatatype for a list of valid values. If the installation has user-defined data types, this column contains the user-specified data type number.
column_system_maintained	char(8)	Contains Y if the column is system-maintained, or N if not system-maintained.
column_updatable	char(8)	Contains Y if the column can be updated, N if not, or blank if unknown.
column_has_default	char(8)	Contains Y if the column has a default value, N if not, or blank if unknown.
column_default_value	varchar(1501)	The default value defined for the column.

The iophysical_tables Catalog

The information in the iophysical_tables catalog overlaps with some of the information in iitables. This information is provided as a separate catalog primarily for use by EDBC products. Query the physical_source column, in iidbcapabilities, to determine whether you must query iophysical_tables. If you do not want to query iidbcapabilities, then you must always query iophysical_tables to be sure of getting the correct information.

If a queryable object is type T or I (for index, in an Ingres installation only), then it is a physical table and may have an entry in iophysical_tables as well as iitables. In most EDBC products, this table is keyed on table_name plus table_owner:

Column Name	Data Type	Description
table_name	char(32)	The table name. This is an object name.
table_owner	char(32)	The table owner's user name.
table_stats	char(8)	Y if this object has entries in the iistats table.
table_indexes	char(8)	Y if this object has entries in the iiindexes table that refer to this as a base table.
is_readonly	char(8)	Y if updates are physically allowed on this object.
concurrent_access	char(8)	Y if concurrent access is allowed.
num_rows	integer	The estimated number of rows in the table. Set to -1 if unknown.
storage_structure	char(16)	The storage structure of the table. Possible values are: heap, btree, isam, or hash.
is_compressed	char(8)	Indicates if the table is stored in compressed format. Y if it is compressed, N if not compressed, or blank if unknown.
key_is_compressed	char(8)	Indicates if the table uses compression. Y if the table uses compression, N if no compression, or blank if unknown.
duplicate_rows	char(8)	Contains U if rows must be unique, D if duplicates are allowed, or blank if unknown.
unique_rule	char(8)	Contains U if the storage structure is unique, D if duplicates are allowed, or blank if unknown or inapplicable.
number_pages	integer	The estimated number of physical pages in the table. Set to -1 if unknown.
overflow_pages	integer	The estimated number of overflow pages in the table. Set to -1 if unknown.
row_width	integer	The size (in bytes) of the uncompressed binary value for a row in the object for Ingres. Set to -1 if this is unknown.
allocation_size	integer	The table allocation size, in pages. Set to -1 if unknown.
extend_size	integer	The extend size, in pages. Set to -1 if unknown.
allocated_pages	integer	The total number of pages allocated to the table.

Column Name	Data Type	Description
table_pagesize	integer	Stores the pages of a table

The iiviews Catalog

The iiviews catalog contains one or more entries for each view in the database (views are indicated in iitables by table type = "V"). Because the text_segment column is limited to 240 characters per row, a single view can require more than one row to contain all its text. In this case, the text will be broken in mid-word across the sequenced rows. The text column is pure text, and can contain newline characters.

Column Name	Data Type	Description
table_name	char(32)	The view name. Must be a valid object name.
table_owner	char(32)	The view owner's user name.
view_dml	char(8)	The language in which the view was created: S (for SQL) or Q (for QUEL).
check_option	char(8)	Contains Y if the check option was specified in the create view statement, N if not, or blank if unknown.
text_sequence	integer	The sequence number for the text field, starting with 1.
text_segment	varchar(256)	The text of the view definition.

The iiindexes Catalog

Each table with a table_type of I in the iitables table has an entry in iiindexes. In Ingres, all indexes also have an entry in iiphysical_tables.

Column Name	Data Type	Description
index_name	char(32)	The index name. Must be a valid object name.
index_owner	char(32)	The index owner's user name.
create_date	char(25)	Creation date of index.
base_name	char(32)	The base table name. Must be a valid object name.

Column Name	Data Type	Description
base_owner	char(32)	The base table owner. Must be a valid user name.
storage_structure	char(16)	The storage structure for the index: heap, hash, isam, or btree.
is_compressed	char(8)	Contains Y if the table is stored in compressed format, N if the table is uncompressed, or blank if unknown.
unique_rule	char(8)	Contains U if the index is unique, D if duplicate key values are allowed, or blank if unknown.
unique_scope	char(8)	Contains S if uniqueness is checked after completion of queries or R if uniqueness is checked after each row is modified or inserted.
system_use	char(8)	Contains S if the index was created by the DBMS, U if created by a user, or blank if unknown. (The Ingres DBMS creates unique indexes to enforce unique constraints on tables.)
persistent	char(8)	Contains Y if the index is retained when its base table is modified, or N if the index is dropped when the table is modified.

The `iiindex_columns` Catalog

For indexes, any Ingres columns that are defined as part of the primary index key will have an entry in `iiindex_columns`. For a full list of all columns in the index, use the `iicolumns` catalog.

Column Name	Data Type	Description
index_name	char(32)	The index containing <i>column_name</i> . This is an object name.
index_owner	char(32)	The index owner. Must be a valid user name.
column_name	char(32)	The name of the column. Must be a valid object name.
key_sequence	integer	Sequence of column within the key, numbered from 1.
sort_direction	char(8)	Defaults to A (ascending).

The ialt_columns Catalog

All columns defined as part of an alternate key have an entry in ialt_columns.

Column Name	Data Type	Description
table_name	char(32)	The table to which column_name belongs.
table_owner	char(32)	The table owner.
key_id	integer	The number of the alternate key for this table.
column_name	char(32)	The name of the column.
key_sequence	smallint	Sequence of column within the key, numbered from 1.

The iistats Catalog

This catalog contains entries for columns that have statistics.

Column Name	Data Type	Description
table_name	char(32)	The name of the table.
table_owner	char(32)	The table owner's user name.
column_name	char(32)	The column name to which the statistics apply.
create_date	char(25)	The date on which statistics were gathered.
num_unique	float8	The number of unique values in the column.
rept_factor	float8	The repetition factor.
has_unique	char(8)	Contains Y if the column has unique values; otherwise, N.
pct_nulls	float8	The percentage (fraction of 1.0) of the table which contains NULL for the column.
num_cells	integer	The number of cells in the histogram.
column_domain	integer	Identifies the domain from which the column draws its values.
is_complete	char(8)	Contains Y if the column contains all possible values in its domain, N if the column does not contain all possible values in its domain, or blank if unknown.

Column Name	Data Type	Description
stat_version	char(8)	Version of statistics (for example, ING6.5).
histogram_data_length	integer	Length of the histogram boundary values.

The iihistograms Catalog

The iihistograms table contains histogram information used by the optimizer.

Column Name	Data Type	Description
table_name	char(32)	The table for the histogram. Must be a valid object name.
table_owner	char(32)	The table owner's user name.
column_name	char(32)	The name of the column.
text_sequence	integer	The sequence number for the histogram, numbered from 1. There may be several rows in this table, used to order the "text_segment" data when histogram is read into memory.
text_segment	char(228)	The encoded histogram data, created by optimizedb.

The iiprocedures Catalog

The iiprocedures catalog contains one or more entries for each database procedure defined on a database. Because the text of the procedure definition can contain more than 240 characters, iiprocedures may contain more than one entry for a single procedure. The text may contain newlines and may be broken mid-word across rows.

This table is keyed on procedure_name and procedure_owner:

Column Name	Data Type	Description
procedure_name	char(32)	The database procedure name, as specified in the create procedure statement.
procedure_owner	char(32)	The procedure owner's username.
create_date	char(25)	The procedure's creation date.
proc_subtype	char(8)	The subtype of this procedure. For standard

Column Name	Data Type	Description
		EDBC procedures, this will be N(native).
text_sequence	smallint	The sequence number for the test_segment.
text_segment	varchar (240)	The text of the procedure definition.
system_use	char(8)	Contains S if the procedure is system-generated, U if created by a user, or blank if unknown. EDBC generates procedures to enforce table constraints.

The iiregistrations Catalog

The iiregistrations catalog contains the text of register statements and is used by EDBC products.

Column Name	Data Type	Description
object_name	char(32)	The name of the registered table, view, or index.
object_owner	char(32)	The name of the owner of the table, view, or index.
object_dml	char(8)	The language used in the registration statement. S for SQL or Q for QUEL.
object_type	char(8)	Describes the object type of object_name. The values are T if the object is a table, V if it is a view, or I if the object is an index.
object_subtype	char(8)	Describes the type of table or view created by the register statement. For an EDBC product, this will be I (imported object).
text_sequence	smallint	The sequence number of the text field, numbered from 1.
text_segment	varchar (240)	The text of the register statement.

The iisynonyms Catalog

The iisynonyms catalog contains information about the synonyms that have been defined for the database. Entries appear in iisynonyms when a create synonym statement is issued. Entries are removed when a drop synonym statement is issued for an existing synonym, or when a drop table | view | index statement drops the table on which the synonym is defined.

Column Name	Data Type	Description
synonym_name	char(32)	The name of the synonym.
synonym_owner	char(32)	The owner of the synonym.
table_name	char(32)	The name of the table, view or index for which the synonym was created.
table_owner	char(32)	The owner of the table.

Standard Catalogs

Mandatory catalogs are required to be present on all installations. This section lists the catalogs in each category.

Mandatory Catalogs with Entries Required

The following catalogs must be present on EDBC installations. These catalogs must contain entries:

- iidbcapabilities
- iidbconstants
- iitables
- iicolumns

Mandatory Catalogs without Entries Required

The following catalogs must be present on EDBC installations. However, these catalogs are not required to contain entries:

- `iipphysical_tables`
- `iiviews`
- `iiindexes`
- `iiindex_columns`
- `iialt_columns`
- `iistats`
- `iihistograms`
- `iiauditables`
- `iiconstraint_indexes`
- `iiconstraints`
- `iikeys`
- `iiref_constraints`
- `iisecurity_alarms`

Keywords

This appendix lists OpenSQL keywords and indicates the contexts in which they are reserved. This list allows you to avoid assigning object names that conflict with reserved words.

Note: The keywords in this list do not necessarily correspond to supported EDBC features. Some words are reserved for future or internal use, and some words are reserved to provide backward compatibility with older features.

Keyword List

In the following table, the column headings have the following meanings:

- **ISQL** (Interactive SQL) - These keywords are reserved by the DBMS.
- **ESQL** (Embedded SQL) - These keywords are reserved by the SQL preprocessors.

Note: The ESQL preprocessor also reserves forms statements.

The following table displays OpenSQL keywords:

Keyword:	SQL	
Reserved in:	ISQL	ESQL
abort	*	*
activate	*	*
add	*	*
addform	*	*
after	*	*
all	*	*
alter	*	*
and	*	*

Keyword:	SQL	
Reserved in:	ISQL	ESQL
any	*	*
append	*	*
array	*	*
as	*	*
asc	*	*
at	*	*
authorization	*	*
avg	*	*
avgu	*	*
before	*	*
begin	*	*
between	*	*
breakdisplay	*	*
by	*	*
byref	*	*
call	*	*
callframe	*	*
callproc	*	*
cascade	*	*
check	*	*
clear	*	*
clearrow	*	*
close	*	*
column	*	*
command	*	*
commit	*	*
committed	*	*
connect	*	*
constraint	*	*

Keyword:	SQL	
Reserved in:	ISQL	ESQL
continue	*	*
copy	*	*
count	*	*
countu	*	*
create	*	*
current	*	*
current_user	*	*
cursor	*	*
datahandler	*	*
declare	*	*
default	*	*
define	*	*
delete	*	*
deleterow	*	*
desc	*	*
describe	*	*
descriptor	*	*
destroy	*	*
direct	*	*
disable	*	*
disconnect	*	*
display	*	*
distinct	*	*
distribute	*	*
do	*	*
down	*	*
drop	*	*
else	*	*
elseif	*	*

Keyword:	SQL	
Reserved in:	ISQL	ESQL
enable	*	*
end	*	*
end-exec	*	*
enddata	*	*
enddisplay	*	*
endforms	*	*
endif	*	*
endloop	*	*
endretrieve	*	*
endselect	*	*
endwhile	*	*
escape	*	*
exclude	*	*
excluding	*	*
execute	*	*
exists	*	*
exit	*	*
fetch	*	*
field	*	*
finalize	*	*
for	*	*
foreign	*	*
formdata	*	*
forminit	*	*
forms	*	*
from	*	*
full	*	*
get	*	*
getform	*	*

Keyword:	SQL	
Reserved in:	ISQL	ESQL
getoper	*	*
getrow	*	*
global	*	*
goto	*	*
grant	*	*
group	*	*
having	*	*
help	*	*
help_forms	*	*
help_frs	*	*
helpfile	*	*
identified	*	*
if	*	*
iimessage	*	*
iiprintf	*	*
iiprompt	*	*
iistatement	*	*
immediate	*	*
import	*	*
in	*	*
include	*	*
index	*	*
indicator	*	*
ingres	*	*
initial_user	*	*
initialize	*	*
inittable	*	*
inner	*	*
inquire_equel	*	*

Keyword:	SQL	
Reserved in:	ISQL	ESQL
inquire_forms	*	*
inquire_frs	*	*
inquire_ingres	*	*
inquire_sql	*	*
insert	*	*
insertrow	*	*
integrity	*	*
into	*	*
is	*	*
isolation	*	*
join	*	*
key	*	*
left	*	*
level	*	*
like	*	*
loadtable	*	*
local	*	*
max	*	*
menuitem	*	*
message	*	*
min	*	*
mode	*	*
modify	*	*
module	*	*
move	*	*
natural	*	*
next	*	*
noecho	*	*
not	*	*

Keyword:	SQL	
Reserved in:	ISQL	ESQL
notrim	*	*
null	*	*
of	*	*
off	*	*
on	*	*
only	*	*
open	*	*
option	*	*
or	*	*
order	*	*
out	*	*
outer	*	*
param	*	*
permit	*	*
prepare	*	*
preserve	*	*
primary	*	*
print	*	*
printscreen	*	*
privileges	*	*
procedure	*	*
prompt	*	*
public	*	*
putform	*	*
putoper	*	*
putrow	*	*
qualification	*	*
raise	*	*
range	*	*

Keyword:	SQL	
Reserved in:	ISQL	ESQL
read	*	*
redisplay	*	*
references	*	*
referencing	*	*
register	*	*
relocate	*	*
remove	*	*
rename	*	*
repeat	*	*
repeatable	*	*
repeated	*	*
replace	*	*
replicate	*	*
restrict	*	*
resume	*	*
retrieve	*	*
return	*	*
revoke	*	*
right	*	*
rollback	*	*
rows	*	*
run	*	*
save	*	*
savepoint	*	*
schema	*	*
screen	*	*
scroll	*	*
scrolldown	*	*
scrollup	*	*

Keyword:	SQL	
Reserved in:	ISQL	ESQL
section	*	*
select	*	*
serializable	*	*
session	*	*
session_user	*	*
set	*	*
set_4gl	*	*
set_equel	*	*
set_forms	*	*
set_frs	*	*
set_ingres	*	*
set_sql	*	*
sleep	*	*
some	*	*
sort	*	*
sql	*	*
stop	*	*
submenu	*	*
sum	*	*
sumu	*	*
system	*	*
system_ maintained	*	*
system_user	*	*
table	*	*
tabledata	*	*
temporary	*	*
then	*	*
to	*	*

Keyword:	SQL	
Reserved in:	ISQL	ESQL
type	*	*
union	*	*
unique	*	*
unloadtable	*	*
until	*	*
up	*	*
update	*	*
user	*	*
using	*	*
validate	*	*
validrow	*	*
values	*	*
view	*	*
when	*	*
whenever	*	*
where	*	*
while	*	*
with	*	*
work	*	*

The following table lists OpenSQL double keywords:

Double Keyword:	SQL	
Reserved in:	ISQL	ESQL
after field	*	*
alter group	*	*
alter location	*	*
alter role	*	*
alter security_audit	*	*
alter table	*	*
alter user	*	*
array of	*	*
before field	*	*
begin transaction	*	*
by user	*	*
call on	*	*
call procedure	*	*
class of	*	*
close cursor	*	*
comment on	*	*
connect to	*	*
copy table	*	*
create dbevent	*	*
create group	*	*
create integrity	*	*
create link	*	*
create location	*	*
create permit	*	*
create procedure	*	*
create role	*	*
create rule	*	*
create security_alarm	*	*

Double Keyword:	SQL	
Reserved in:	ISQL	ESQL
create synonym	*	*
create user	*	*
create view	*	*
current installation	*	*
define cursor	*	*
declare cursor	*	*
define integrity	*	*
define link	*	*
define location	*	*
define permit	*	*
define qry	*	*
define query	*	*
define view	*	*
delete cursor	*	*
destroy integrity	*	*
destroy link	*	*
destroy permit	*	*
destroy table	*	*
destroy view	*	*
direct connect	*	*
direct disconnect	*	*
direct execute	*	*
disable security_audit	*	*
disconnect current	*	*
display submenu	*	*
drop dbevent	*	*
drop group	*	*
drop integrity	*	*
drop link	*	*

Double Keyword:	SQL	
Reserved in:	ISQL	ESQL
drop location	*	*
drop permit	*	*
drop procedure	*	*
drop role	*	*
drop rule	*	*
drop security_alarm	*	*
drop synonym	*	*
drop user	*	*
drop view	*	*
enable security_audit	*	*
end transaction	*	*
exec sql	*	*
execute immediate	*	*
execute on	*	*
execute procedure	*	*
foreign key	*	*
for deferred	*	*
for direct	*	*
for readonly	*	*
for retrieve	*	*
for update	*	*
from group	*	*
from role	*	*
from user	*	*
full join	*	*
get data	*	*
get dbevent	*	*
global temporary	*	*
help comment	*	*

Double Keyword:	SQL	
Reserved in:	ISQL	ESQL
help integrity	*	*
help permit	*	*
help table	*	*
help view	*	*
identified by	*	*
inner join	*	*
is null	*	*
left join	*	*
modify table	*	*
not like	*	*
not null	*	*
on commit	*	*
on current	*	*
on database	*	*
on dbevent	*	*
on location	*	*
on procedure	*	*
only where	*	*
open cursor	*	*
order by	*	*
primary key	*	*
procedure returning	*	*
put data	*	*
raise dbevent	*	*
raise error	*	*
register dbevent	*	*
register table	*	*
register view	*	*
remove dbevent	*	*

Double Keyword:	SQL	
Reserved in:	ISQL	ESQL
remove table	*	*
remove view	*	*
replace cursor	*	*
resume entry	*	*
resume menu	*	*
resume next	*	*
retrieve cursor	*	*
right join	*	*
run submenu	*	*
session group	*	*
session role	*	*
session user	*	*
set aggregate	*	*
set autocommit	*	*
set cache	*	*
set cpufactor	*	*
set date_format	*	*
set ddl_concurrency	*	*
set deadlock	*	*
set decimal	*	*
set io_trace	*	*
set j_freesz1	*	*
set j_freesz2	*	*
set j_freesz3	*	*
set j_freesz4	*	*
set j_sortbufsz	*	*
set jcpufactor	*	*
set joinop	*	*
set journaling	*	*

Double Keyword:	SQL	
Reserved in:	ISQL	ESQL
set lock_trace	*	*
set lockmode	*	*
set logdbevents	*	*
set log_trace	*	*
set logging	*	*
set maxcost	*	*
set maxcpu	*	*
set maxio	*	*
set maxpage	*	*
set maxquery	*	*
set maxrow	*	*
set money_format	*	*
set money_prec	*	*
set nodeadlock	*	*
set noio_trace	*	*
set nojoinop	*	*
set nojournaling	*	*
set nolock_trace	*	*
set nologdbevents	*	*
set nolog_trace	*	*
set nologging	*	*
set nomaxcost	*	*
set nomaxcpu	*	*
set nomaxio	*	*
set nomaxpage	*	*
set nomaxquery	*	*
set nomaxrow	*	*
set nooptimizeonly	*	*
set noprintdbevents	*	*

Double Keyword:	SQL	
Reserved in:	ISQL	ESQL
set noprintqry	*	*
set noprintrules	*	*
set noqep	*	*
set norules	*	*
set nosql	*	*
set nostatistics	*	*
set notrace	*	*
set optimizeonly	*	*
set printdbevents	*	*
set printqry	*	*
set qbufsize	*	*
set qep	*	*
set query_size	*	*
set result_structure	*	*
set ret_into	*	*
set rules	*	*
set session	*	*
set sortbufsize	*	*
set sql	*	*
set statistics	*	*
set trace	*	*
set work	*	*
system user	*	*
to group	*	*
to role	*	*
to user	*	*
user authorization	*	*
with null	*	*
with short_remark	*	*

ISO SQL Keywords

The following keywords are ISO standard keywords that are not currently reserved in SQL or embedded SQL. You may want to treat these as reserved words to ensure compatibility with other implementations of SQL.

absolute	cross	get
action	current_date	go
allocate	current_time	hour
alter	current_timestamp	identity
are	date	initially
asc	day	input
assertion	deallocate	insensitive
bit	dec	int
bit_length	decimal	integer
both	deferrable	intersects
cascaded	deferred	interval
case	desc	isolation
cast	diagnostics	language
catalog	domain	last
char	double	leading
character	else	level
char_length	except	lower
character_length	exception	match
coalesce	exec	minute
collate	external	module
collation	extract	month
connection	false	names
constraints	first	national
convert	float	nchar
corresponding	found	no

nullif	relative	translate
numeric	second	translation
octet_length	size	trim
only	smallint	true
option	space	unknown
outer	sql	upper
output	sqlcode	usage
overlaps	sqlerror	value
pad	substring	varchar
partial	then	varying
position	time	work
precision	timestamp	write
prior	timezone_hour	year
privileges	timezone_minute	zone
read	trailing	
real	transaction	

Terminal Monitor

The Terminal Monitor allows you to interactively enter, edit, and execute individual queries or files containing queries. The Terminal Monitor also allows you to execute operating system level commands.

There are two versions of the Terminal Monitor:

- Forms-based
- Line-based

This appendix describes the line-based version, and includes instructions on invoking the Terminal Monitor and issuing queries interactively.

Accessing the Terminal Monitor

To invoke the line-based Terminal Monitor, type this command at the operating system prompt:

```
sql [flags]
```

The `sql` command accepts a variety of flags that define how the Terminal Monitor and the DBMS behave during your session. The following table lists some useful flags:

Flag	Description
-a	Disables the autoclear function. This means that the query buffer is never automatically cleared. It is as if you inserted the <code>\append</code> command after every <code>\go</code> . This flag requires you to explicitly clear the query buffer using <code>\reset</code> after every query.

Flag	Description
-d	Turns off display of the dayfile (the text file that is displayed when the Terminal Monitor is invoked).
-s	Suppresses status messages. All messages except error messages are turned off, including login and logout messages, the dayfile, and prompts. This flag is useful for executing queries redirected from files.

The Query Buffer

In the Terminal Monitor, each query that you type is placed in a query buffer, rather than executed immediately. The queries are executed when you type the execution command (`\go` or `\g`). The results, by default, appear on your terminal. For example, assume that you have a table called, `employee`, which lists all employees in your company. To view a list of those employees who live in a particular city (`cityA`), you could enter the following statement:

```
select name from employee where city='cityA'  
\g
```

The query is placed in the query buffer and executed when you enter `\g`. The returned rows display on your terminal.

Several other operations can also be performed on the query buffer. You can:

- Edit the contents
- Print the contents
- Write the contents to another file

After a `\go` command the query buffer is cleared if another query is typed, unless a command that affects the query buffer is typed first. Commands that retain the query buffer contents are:

```
\append or \a  
\edit or \e  
\print or \p  
\bell  
\nobell
```

For example, typing:

```
help parts
\go
select * from parts
```

results in the query buffer containing:

```
select * from parts
```

whereas, typing:

```
help parts
\go
\print
select * from parts
```

results in the query buffer containing:

```
help parts
select * from parts
```

This feature can be overridden by executing the `\append` command before executing the `\go` command or by specifying the `-a` flag when issuing the `sql` command to begin your session.

The Terminal Monitor Commands

The Terminal Monitor commands allow you to manipulate the contents of the query buffer or your environment. Unlike the OpenSQL statements that you type into the Terminal Monitor, Terminal Monitor commands are executed as soon as the Return key is pressed.

All of the Terminal Monitor commands must be preceded with a backslash (`\`). To enter a backslash literally, you must enclose it in quotes. For example, the following statement inserts a backslash into the Test table:

```
insert into test values('\')\g
```

Some Terminal Monitor commands accept a file name as an argument. These commands must appear alone on a single line. The Terminal Monitor interprets all characters appearing on the line after such commands as a file name. Those Terminal Monitor commands that do not accept arguments can be stacked on a single line. For example:

```
\date\go\date
```

returns the date and time before and after execution of the current query buffer.

The Terminal Monitor commands are shown in the following table:

Command	Description
\r or \reset	Erase the entire query (reset the query buffer). The former contents of the buffer are lost and cannot be retrieved.
\p or \print	Print the current query. The contents of the buffer are printed on the user terminal.
<div style="background-color: black; color: white; padding: 2px; border-radius: 5px; display: inline-block;">Win32</div> <div style="background-color: black; color: white; padding: 2px; border-radius: 5px; display: inline-block;">UNIX</div>	\e or \ed or \edit or \editor [<i>filename</i>] Enter the text editor of the operating system (designated by the startup file). Use the appropriate editor exit command to return to the Terminal Monitor. If no file name is given, the current contents of the query buffer are sent to the editor, and upon return, the query buffer is replaced with the edited query. If a file name is given, the query buffer is written to that file. On exit from the editor, the file contains the edited query, but the query buffer remains unchanged. ■
<div style="background-color: black; color: white; padding: 2px; border-radius: 5px; display: inline-block;">VMS</div>	Enter the text editor (see the VAX EDT Editor Manual). Use the EDT command exit or the sequence of commands, write followed by quit, to return to the Terminal Monitor. If no file name is given, the current contents of the query buffer are sent to the editor, and upon return, the query buffer is replaced with the edited query. If a file name is given, the query buffer is written to that file, and on exit from the editor, the file contains the edited query, but the workspace remains unchanged. ■
\g or \go	Process the current query. The contents of the buffer are transmitted to the DBMS and run.
\time or \date	Print the current time and date.
\a or \append	Append to the query buffer. Typing \append after completion of a query overrides the auto-clear feature and guarantees that the query buffer will not be reset until executed again.
<div style="background-color: black; color: white; padding: 2px; border-radius: 5px; display: inline-block;">UNIX</div>	\s or \sh or \shell Escape to the UNIX shell (command line interpreter). Pressing Ctrl+D exits the shell and returns you to the Terminal Monitor. ■
<div style="background-color: black; color: white; padding: 2px; border-radius: 5px; display: inline-block;">VMS</div>	Escape to the command line interpreter to execute VMS commands. The VAX command line interpreter (DCL) is initiated. Subsequently, typing the logout command exits DCL and returns you to the Terminal Monitor. ■

Command	Description
\q or \quit	Exit the Terminal Monitor.
\cd or \chdir <i>dir_name</i>	Change the working directory of the monitor to the named directory.
\i or \include or \read <i>filename</i>	Read the named file into the query buffer. Backslash characters in the file are processed as they are read.
\w or \write <i>filename</i>	Write the contents of the query buffer to the named file.
\script [<i>filename</i>]	Write/stop writing the subsequent SQL statements and their results to the specified file. If no file name is supplied with the \script command, output is logged to a file called script.ing in the current directory. The \script command toggles between logging and not logging your session to a file. If you supply a file name on the \script command that terminates logging to a file, the file name is ignored. Use this command to save result tables from SQL statements for output. The \script command in no way impedes the terminal output of your session.
\bell and \nobell	Tell the Terminal Monitor to include (\bell) or not to include (\nobell) a bell (that is, Ctrl+G) with the continue or go prompt. The default is \nobell.
\[no]continue	Tell the Terminal Monitor to continue statement processing on error or not to continue (nocontinue). In either case, the error message displays. The command can be abbreviated to \co (\continue) or \noco (\nocontinue). The default action is to continue. This command can be used to change that behavior. You can also change the default by setting II_TM_ON_ERROR.

Messages and Prompts

The Terminal Monitor has a variety of messages to keep you informed of its status and that of the query buffer.

When you log in, the Terminal Monitor prints a login message that tells the version number and the login time. Following that message, the dayfile appears.

When the Terminal Monitor is ready to accept input and the query buffer is empty, the message `go` appears. The message `continue` appears instead, if there is something in the query buffer.

The prompt, `>>editor`, indicates that you are in the text editor.

Character Input and Output

When you input non-printable ASCII characters through the Terminal Monitor, the Terminal Monitor maps these characters to blanks. Whenever this occurs, the Terminal Monitor displays the message:

```
Non-printing character nnn converted to blank
```

where *nnn* is replaced with the actual character.

For example, if you enter the statement:

```
insert into test values('^La')
```

the Terminal Monitor converts the `^L` to a blank before sending it to the DBMS and displays the message described above.

To insert non-printing data into a `char` or `varchar` field, specify the data as a hexadecimal value. For example:

```
insert into test values (x'07');
```

This feature can be used to insert a newline character into a column:

```
insert into test values ('Hello world'+x'0a');
```

This statement inserts `'Hello world\n'` into the test table.

On output, if the data type is `char` or `varchar`, any binary data are shown as octal numbers (`\000`, `\035`, and so on.). To avoid ambiguity, any backslashes present in data of the `char` or `varchar` type are displayed as double backslashes. For example, if you insert the following into the "test" table:

```
insert into test values('\aa')
```

when you retrieve that value, you will see:

```
\\aa
```

Help

When working in the Terminal Monitor, you can obtain on-line help using the help statement. This statement provides information about a variety of OpenSQL statements and features. For a complete list of help options, refer to Help in the “OpenSQL Statements” chapter.

Aborting the Editor (VMS only)

A black rounded rectangular button with the text "VMS" in white.

Do not type Ctrl+Y and Ctrl+C while you are escaped to an editor (unless the editor assigns its own meaning to Ctrl+C) or VMS. VMS does not properly signal these events to the initiating process. ■

Generic Error Codes

This appendix lists EDBC generic error codes and maps generic errors to SQLSTATE values. Error code mapping works as follows:

- **Proprietary error codes** - Each host DBMS returns a set of proprietary error codes. These error codes are unique to the host DBMS and therefore not useful for developing portable applications. EDBC products map proprietary error codes to generic error codes. This is a many-to-one mapping: many proprietary error codes may map to a single generic error code. For details about proprietary error codes, refer to your host DBMS documentation.
- **Generic error codes** - EDBC products return a consistent set of errors. To enable your application to interact with different host DBMS (through EDBC products), your applications should check generic error codes.
- **SQLSTATE** - SQLSTATE is the ANSI standard error variable. If you are developing ANSI-compliant applications, your application should check SQLSTATE. The mapping of generic errors to the SQLSTATE is many-to-one: many generic errors may map to a single SQLSTATE value.

SQLSTATE Values

The following table lists the values returned in SQLSTATE. An asterisk in the “OpenSQL Only?” column indicates that the value is not part of the basic set of values prescribed by ANSI, but rather a value that ANSI permits the host DBMS vendor to define.

SQLSTATE	OpenSQL Only?	Description
00000		Successful completion
01000		Warning
01001		Cursor operation conflict
01002		Disconnect error
01003		Null value eliminated in set function

SQLSTATE	OpenSQL Only?	Description
01004		String data, right truncation
01005		Insufficient item descriptor areas
01006		Privilege not revoked
01007		Privilege not granted
01008		Implicit zero-bit padding
01009		Search condition too long for information schema
0100A		Query expression too long for information schema
01500	*	LDB table not dropped
01501	*	DSQL UPDATE or DELETE will affect entire table
02000		No data
07000		Dynamic SQL error
07001		Using clause does not match dynamic parameter specification
07002		Using clause does not match target specification
07003		Cursor specification cannot be executed
07004		Using clause required for dynamic parameters
07005		Prepared statement not a cursor specification
07006		Restricted data type attribute violation
07007		Using clause required for result fields
07008		Invalid descriptor count
07009		Invalid descriptor index
07500	*	Context mismatch
08000		Connection exception
08001		SQL-client unable to establish SQL-connection

SQLSTATE	OpenSQL Only?	Description
08002		Connection name in use
08003		Connection does not exist
08004		SQL-server rejected establishment of SQL-connection
08006		Connection failure
08007		Transaction resolution unknown
08500	*	LDB is unavailable
0A000		Feature not supported
0A001		Multiple host DBMS transactions
0A500	*	Valid query language
21000		Cardinality violation
22001		String data, right truncation
22002		Null value, no indicator parameter
22003		Numeric value out of range
22005		Error in assignment
22007		Invalid datetime format
22008		Datetime field overflow
22009		Invalid time zone displacement value
22011		Substring error
22012		Division by zero
22015		Interval field overflow
22018		Invalid character value for cast
22019		Invalid escape character
22021		Character not in repertoire
22022		Indicator overflow
22023		Invalid parameter value
22024		Unterminated C string

SQLSTATE	OpenSQL Only?	Description
22025		Invalid escape sequence
22026		String data, length mismatch
22027		Trim error
22500	*	Invalid data type
23000		Integrity constraint violation
24000		Invalid cursor state
25000		Invalid transaction state
26000		Invalid SQL statement name
27000		Triggered data change violation
28000		Invalid authorization specification
2A000		Syntax error or access rule violation in direct SQL statement
2A500	*	Table not found
2A501	*	Column not found
2A502	*	Duplicate object name
2A503	*	Insufficient privilege
2A504	*	Cursor not found
2A505	*	Object not found
2A506	*	Invalid identifier
2A507	*	Reserved identifier
2B000		Dependent privilege descriptors still exist
2C000		Invalid character set name
2D000		Invalid transaction termination
2E000		Invalid connection name
33000		Invalid SQL descriptor name
34000		Invalid cursor name
35000		Invalid condition number

SQLSTATE	OpenSQL Only?	Description
37000		Syntax error or access rule violation in SQL dynamic statement
37500	*	Table not found
37501	*	Column not found
37502	*	Duplicate object name
37503	*	Insufficient privilege
37504	*	Cursor not found
37505	*	Object not found
37506	*	Invalid identifier
37507	*	Reserved identifier
3C000		Ambiguous cursor name
3D000		Invalid catalog name
3F000		Invalid schema name
40000		Transaction rollback
40001		Serialization failure
40002		Integrity constraint violation
40003		Statement completion unknown
42000		Syntax error or access rule violation
42500	*	Table not found
42501	*	Column not found
42502	*	Duplicate object name
42503	*	Insufficient privilege
42504	*	Cursor not found
42505	*	Object not found
42506	*	Invalid identifier
42507	*	Reserved identifier
44000		With check option violation

SQLSTATE	OpenSQL Only?	Description
50000	*	Miscellaneous ODBC-specific errors
50001	*	Invalid duplicate row
50002	*	Limit has been exceeded
50003	*	Resource exhausted
50004	*	System configuration error
50005	*	ODBC product-related error
50006	*	Fatal error
50007	*	Invalid SQL statement ID
50008	*	Unsupported statement
50009	*	Database procedure error raised
5000A	*	Query error
5000B	*	Internal error
5000D	*	Invalid cursor name
5000E	*	Duplicate SQL statement ID
5000F	*	Textual information
5000G	*	Database procedure message
5000H	*	Unknown/unavailable resource
5000I	*	Unexpected LDB schema change
5000J	*	Inconsistent host DBMS catalog
5000K	*	SQLSTATE status code unavailable
5000L	*	Protocol error
5000M	*	IPC error
HZ000		Remote Database Access 2

Generic Error Codes

Generic error codes are error codes that map to DBMS-specific errors returned by the host DBMS that you access through EDBC products. If your application interacts with more than one type of DBMS, it should check generic errors in order to remain portable. The following table lists generic error codes:

Generic Error Code	Message	Explanation
+00050	Warning message	The request was successfully completed, but a warning was issued.
+00100	No more data	A request for data was processed, but either no data or no more data fitting the requested characteristics was found.
00000	Successful completion	The request completed normally with no errors or unexpected conditions occurring.
-00001 to -29999	Reserved	These values are reserved for warning messages.
-30100	Table not found	A table referenced in a statement does not exist or is owned by another user. This error may also be returned concerning an index or a view.
-30110	Column not known or not in table	A column referenced in a statement could not be found.
-30120	Unknown cursor	An invalid or unopened cursor name or identifier was specified or referenced in a statement.
-30130	Other database object not found	A database object other than a table, view, index, column or cursor was specified or referenced in a statement, but could not be identified or located. This might apply to a database procedure, a grant or permission, a rule, or other object.
-30140	Other unknown or unavailable resource	A resource, of a type other than one mentioned above, is either not known or unavailable for the request.
-30200	Duplicate resource definition	An attempt to define a database object (such as a table) was made, but the object already exists.

Generic Error Code	Message	Explanation
-30210	Invalid attempt to insert duplicate row	A request to insert a row was refused; the table will not accept duplicates, or there is a unique index defined on the table.
-31000	Statement syntax error	The statement just processed had a syntax error.
-31100	Invalid identifier	An identifier, such as a table name, cursor name or identifier, procedure name, was invalid. It may have contained incorrect characters or been too long.
-31200	Unsupported query language	A request to use an unrecognized or unsupported query language was made.
-32000	Inconsistent or incorrect query specification	A query, while syntactically correct, was logically inconsistent, conflicting or otherwise incorrect.
-33000	Run-time logical error	An error occurred at run-time. An incorrect specification was made, an incorrect host variable value or type was specified or some other error not detected until run-time was found.
-34000	Not privileged/ restricted peration	An operation was rejected because the user did not have appropriate permission or privileges to perform the operation, or the operation was restricted (for example, to a certain time of day) and the operation was requested at the wrong time or in the wrong mode.
-36000	System limit exceeded	A system limit was exceeded during query processing, for example, number of columns, size of a table, row length, or number of tables in a query.
-36100	Out of needed resource	The system exhausted, or did not have enough of, a resource such as memory or temporary disk space required to complete the query.
-36200	System configuration error	An error in the configuration of the system was detected.
-37000	Communication/ transmission error	The connection between the host DBMS and the client failed.

Generic Error Code	Message	Explanation
-38000	Error within the EDBC product	An error occurred in an EDBC or host DBMS interface.
-38100	Host system error	An error occurred in the host system.
-39000	Fatal error - session terminated	A severe error occurred which has terminated the session with the host DBMS or the client.
-39100	Unmappable error	An error occurred which is not mapped to a generic error.
-40100	Cardinality violation	A request tried to return more or fewer rows than allowed. This usually occurs when a singleton select request returns more than one row, or when a nested subquery returns an incorrect number of rows.
-402dd	Data exception	A data handling error occurred. The subcode <i>dd</i> defines the type of error.
-40300	Constraint violation	A host DBMS constraint, such as a referential integrity or the CHECK option on a view was violated. The request was rejected.
-40400	Invalid cursor state	An invalid cursor operation was requested; for example, an update request was issued for a read-only cursor.
-40500	Invalid transaction state	A request was made which was invalid in the current transaction state; for example, an update request was issued in a read-only transaction, or a request was issued improperly in or out of a transaction.
-40600	Invalid SQL statement identifier	An identifier for an SQL statement, such as a repeat query name, was invalid.
-40700	Triggered data change violation	A change requested by a cascaded referential integrity change was invalid.
-41000	Invalid user authorization identifier	An authorization identifier, usually a user name, was invalid.

Generic Error Code	Message	Explanation
-41200	Invalid SQL statement	Unlike generic error -31000 (statement syntax error), this was a recognized statement that is either currently invalid or unsupported.
-41500	Duplicate SQL statement identifier	An identifier for an SQL statement, such as a repeat query name, was already active or known.
-49900	Serialization failure (Deadlock)	An error occurred which caused the query to be rejected. The transaction may have been rolled back (check SQLWARN6 in the SQLCA structure). The query or transaction can be resubmitted; the error was a timeout, deadlock, forced abort, log file full, or other error that the host DBMS resolved by aborting the query or transaction.

Generic Error Data Exception Subcodes

The following table lists subcodes returned with generic error -402 (generic errors -40200 through -40299).

Subcode	Description
00	No subcode
01	Character data truncated from right
02	Null value, no indicator variable specified
03	Exact numeric data, loss of significance (decimal overflow)
04	Error in assignment
05	Fetch orientation has value of zero
06	Invalid date or time format
07	Date/time field overflow
08	Reserved
09	Invalid indicator variable value
10	Invalid cursor name

Subcode	Description
15	Invalid data type
20	Fixed-point overflow
21	Exponent overflow
22	Fixed-point divide
23	Floating point divide
24	Decimal divide
25	Fixed-point underflow
26	Floating point underflow
27	Decimal underflow
28	Other unspecified math exception
99	Maximum legal subcode

SQLSTATE and Equivalent Generic Errors

SQLSTATE is the ANSI/ISO Entry SQL-92-compliant method for returning errors to applications. The following table lists the correspondence between SQLSTATE values and generic errors.

SQLSTATE	Generic Error
00000	E_GE0000_OK
01000	E_GE0032_WARNING
01001	E_GE0032_WARNING
01002	E_GE0032_WARNING
01003	E_GE0032_WARNING
01004	E_GE0032_WARNING
01005	E_GE0032_WARNING
01006	E_GE0032_WARNING
01007	E_GE0032_WARNING
01008	E_GE0032_WARNING
01009	E_GE0032_WARNING

SQLSTATE	Generic Error
0100A	E_GE0032_WARNING
01500	E_GE0032_WARNING
01501	E_GE0032_WARNING
02000	E_GE0064_NO_MORE_DATA
07000	E_GE7D00_QUERY_ERROR
07001	E_GE7D00_QUERY_ERROR
07002	E_GE7D00_QUERY_ERROR
07003	E_GE7D00_QUERY_ERROR
07004	E_GE7D00_QUERY_ERROR
07005	E_GE7D00_QUERY_ERROR
07006	E_GE7D00_QUERY_ERROR
07007	E_GE7D00_QUERY_ERROR
07008	E_GE7D00_QUERY_ERROR
07009	E_GE7D00_QUERY_ERROR
07500	E_GE98BC_OTHER_ERROR
08000	E_GE98BC_OTHER_ERROR
08001	E_GE98BC_OTHER_ERROR
08002	E_GE80E8_LOGICAL_ERROR
08003	E_GE80E8_LOGICAL_ERROR
08004	E_GE94D4_HOST_ERROR
08006	E_GE9088_COMM_ERROR
08007	E_GE9088_COMM_ERROR
08500	E_GE75BC_UNKNOWN_OBJECT
0A000	E_GE98BC_OTHER_ERROR
0A001	E_GE98BC_OTHER_ERROR
0A500	E_GE79E0_UNSUP_LANGUAGE
21000	E_GE9CA4_CARDINALITY
22000	E_GE9D08_DATAEX_NOSUB
22001	E_GE9D09_DATAEX_TRUNC
22002	E_GE9D0A_DATAEX_NEED_IND

SQLSTATE	Generic Error
22003	E_GE9D0B_DATAEX_NUMOVR
22003	E_GE9D1C_DATAEX_FIXOVR
22003	E_GE9D1D_DATAEX_EXPOVR
22003	E_GE9D21_DATAEX_FXPUNF
22003	E_GE9D22_DATAEX_EPUNF
22003	E_GE9D23_DATAEX_DECUNF
22003	E_GE9D24_DATAEX_OTHER
22005	E_GE9D0C_DATAEX_AGN
22007	E_GE9D0F_DATAEX_DATEOVR
22008	E_GE9D0E_DATAEX_DTINV
22009	E_GE9D0F_DATAEX_DATEOVR
22011	E_GE80E8_LOGICAL_ERROR
22012	E_GE9D1E_DATAEX_FPDIV
22012	E_GE9D1F_DATAEX_FLTDIV
22012	E_GE9D20_DATAEX_DCDIV
22012	E_GE9D24_DATAEX_OTHER
22015	E_GE9D0F_DATAEX_DATEOVR
22018	E_GE7918_SYNTAX_ERROR
22019	E_GE7918_SYNTAX_ERROR
22021	E_GE9D08_DATAEX_NOSUB
22022	E_GE9D11_DATAEX_INVIND
22023	E_GE9D08_DATAEX_NOSUB
22024	E_GE98BC_OTHER_ERROR
22025	E_GE7918_SYNTAX_ERROR
22026	E_GE9D08_DATAEX_NOSUB
22027	E_GE7918_SYNTAX_ERROR
22500	E_GE9D17_DATAEX_TYPEINV
23000	E_GE9D6C_CONSTR_VIO
24000	E_GE9DD0_CUR_STATE_INV
25000	E_GE9E34_TRAN_STATE_INV

SQLSTATE	Generic Error
26000	E_GE75B2_NOT_FOUND
27000	E_GE9EFC_TRIGGER_DATA
28000	E_GEA028_USER_ID_INV
2A000	E_GE7918_SYNTAX_ERROR
2A500	E_GE7594_TABLE_NOT_FOUND
2A501	E_GE759E_COLUMN_UNKNOWN
2A502	E_GE75F8_DEF_RESOURCE
2A503	E_GE84D0_NO_PRIVILEGE
2A504	E_GE75A8_CURSOR_UNKNOWN
2A505	E_GE75B2_NOT_FOUND
2A506	E_GE797C_INVALID_IDENT
2A507	E_GE797C_INVALID_IDENT
2B000	E_GE7D00_QUERY_ERROR
2C000	E_GE7918_SYNTAX_ERROR
2D000	E_GE9E34_TRAN_STATE_INV
2E000	E_GE797C_INVALID_IDENT
33000	E_GE75BC_UNKNOWN_OBJECT
34000	E_GE75A8_CURSOR_UNKNOWN
35000	E_GE7D00_QUERY_ERROR
37000	E_GE7918_SYNTAX_ERROR
37500	E_GE7594_TABLE_NOT_FOUND
37501	E_GE759E_COLUMN_UNKNOWN
37502	E_GE75F8_DEF_RESOURCE
37503	E_GE84D0_NO_PRIVILEGE
37504	E_GE75A8_CURSOR_UNKNOWN
37505	E_GE75B2_NOT_FOUND
37506	E_GE797C_INVALID_IDENT
37507	E_GE797C_INVALID_IDENT
3C000	E_GE9DD0_CUR_STATE_INV
3D000	E_GE98BC_OTHER_ERROR

SQLSTATE	Generic Error
3F000	E_GE797C_INVALID_IDENT
40000	E_GE98BC_OTHER_ERROR
40001	E_GEC2EC_SERIALIZATION
40002	E_GE9D6C_CONSTR_VIO
40003	E_GE9088_COMM_ERROR
42000	E_GE7918_SYNTAX_ERROR
42500	E_GE7594_TABLE_NOT_FOUND
42501	E_GE759E_COLUMN_UNKNOWN
42502	E_GE75F8_DEF_RESOURCE
42503	E_GE84D0_NO_PRIVILEGE
42504	E_GE75A8_CURSOR_UNKNOWN
42505	E_GE75B2_NOT_FOUND
42506	E_GE797C_INVALID_IDENT
42507	E_GE797C_INVALID_IDENT
44000	E_GE7D00_QUERY_ERROR
50000	E_GE98BC_OTHER_ERROR
50001	E_GE7602_INS_DUP_ROW
50002	E_GE8CA0_SYSTEM_LIMIT
50003	E_GE8D04_NO_RESOURCE
50004	E_GE8D68_CONFIG_ERROR
50005	E_GE9470_GATEWAY_ERROR
50006	E_GE9858_FATAL_ERROR
50007	E_GE9E98_INV_SQL_STMT_ID
50008	E_GEA0F0_SQL_STMT_INV
50009	E_GEA154_RAISE_ERROR
5000A	E_GE7D00_QUERY_ERROR
5000B	E_GE98BC_OTHER_ERROR
5000C	E_GE9D0D_DATAEX_FETCH0
5000D	E_GE9D12_DATAEX_CURSINV
5000E	E_GEA21C_DUP_SQL_STMT_ID

SQLSTATE	Generic Error
5000F	E_GE98BC_OTHER_ERROR
5000H	E_GE75BC_UNKNOWN_OBJECT
5000I	E_GE98BC_OTHER_ERROR
5000J	E_GE98BC_OTHER_ERROR
5000K	E_GE98BC_OTHER_ERROR
5000L	E_GE9088_COMM_ERROR
5000M	E_GE9088_COMM_ERROR
HZ000	E_GE9088_COMM_ERROR

Index

-- (double hyphen)
comment delimiter, 2-7

- (minus sign)
subtraction, 4-1

'

' (single quotation mark)
pattern matching, 4-13

"

" (double quotation marks)
delimited identifiers, 2-5

%

% (percent sign)
pattern match character, 4-11, 4-12

(

() (parentheses)
expressions, 4-11
logical operator grouping, 4-3
precedence of arithmetic operations, 4-2

*

* (asterisk)
count (function), 4-9

.

. (period)
decimal indicator, 3-10

/

/ (slash)
comment indicator (with asterisk), 2-7
division, 4-1

?

? (question mark)
parameter indicator, 8-33, 8-58

[

[\] (square brackets)
pattern matching, 4-12

\

\ (backslash)

pattern matching, 4-12
\go (Terminal Monitor command)[go], B-2

_ (underscore)
pattern matching, 4-11, 4-12

+

+ (plus sign)
addition, 4-1

=

= (equals sign)
assignment operator, 4-2
comparison operator, 4-2

>

>\< (greater/less than symbol), 4-2

A

a (terminal monitor command), B-4

Aborting
transactions, 8-4, 8-33, 8-61

Aggregate functions, 4-8
data selection, 8-65
nulls, 3-13

And (logical operator), 4-16

Any-or-All (predicate), 4-14

Append
\append (terminal monitor command), B-4

Arithmetic
expressions, 4-1
operations, 4-6
operators, 4-1

As (clause), 8-12, 9-12

Assignment operations, 4-3
character string, 4-4
date, 4-5
null, 4-5
numeric, 4-5

Autocommit, 8-81

Average (aggregate function), 4-8

B

Base tables, 8-13

Begin declare section (statement), 8-2

bell (terminal monitor command), B-5

Binary operators, 4-2

Blanks
char data type, 3-2
trailing, 4-12

C

Case
character strings, 2-7
names, 2-5

Catalogs (system)
dates, 10-1
iialt_columns, 10-17
iicolumns, 10-11
iidsbcapabilities, 10-2
iidsbconstants, 10-5
iidsbhistograms, 10-18
iidsbindex_columns, 10-16
iidsbprocedures, 10-18
iidsbrules, 10-20
iidsbstats, 10-17
iidsbttables, 10-5
iidsbviews, 10-15
updating, 10-2

cd (terminal monitor command), B-5

Char (data type), 3-2

Character data
assignment, 4-4
comparing, 3-2

- OpenSQL, 4-4
- chdir (terminal monitor command), B-5
- Check constraints, 9-9
- Clauses, 4-16
 - escape, 4-12
- Close (statement), 8-3
- Columns
 - expressions, 4-10
 - naming, 8-12
- Columns (in tables)
 - aggregate functions, 4-8
 - defaults, 9-6
 - nullability, 9-7
 - updating, 8-85
- Comments
 - OpenSQL, 2-7
 - program, 8-23
 - variable declaration section, 8-23
- Commit (statement), 8-4
- Comparison (predicate), 4-11
- Comparisons
 - nulls, 3-12
- Connect (statement), 8-6
- Constants
 - list of OpenSQL constants, 3-12
 - now, 3-8
 - null, 3-12
 - today, 3-8
- Constraints
 - adding/removing, 9-4
 - check, 9-9
 - described, 9-8
 - Primary Key Option, 9-12
 - referential, 9-9
 - unique, 9-8
- Conventions
 - operating environments, 1-2
 - syntax, 1-3
 - system-level commands, 1-3
 - used in this guide, 1-2
- Conversion
 - numeric data, 4-6
 - string/character data, 4-4
- Copy (statement)
 - constraints, 9-8

- Correlation names, 2-8
- Count (aggregate function), 4-8, 4-9
- Create index (statement), 8-8
- Create schema authorization (statement), 9-1
- Create table (statement), 8-10, 9-4
- Create view (statement), 8-13
- Creating
 - schemas, 9-1
 - tables, 9-4
- Cursor
 - close (statement), 8-3
 - declare cursor (statement), 5-12, 8-15
 - deleting rows, 5-15
 - fetch (statement), 5-13
 - open (statement), 8-55
 - open cursor (statement), 5-12
 - positioning, 5-17
 - select (statement) and, 2-3
 - select loops vs, 8-77
 - updating rows, 5-14

D

- Data types
 - char, 3-2
 - date, 3-5
 - decimal, 3-4, 4-7
 - floating point, 3-5
 - host languages, 5-5
 - integer, 3-3
 - storage formats, 3-9
 - varchar, 3-2
- Databases
 - accessing/terminating access, 2-3, 7-17, 8-28
 - connecting to programs, 7-17, 8-6
 - revoking privileges, 9-18
 - transactions, 7-1
- Date (data type)
 - assignment, 4-5
 - display formats, 3-9
 - formats, 3-5
 - input formats, 3-6
- Dates
 - catalogs (system), 10-1
 - \date (terminal monitor command), B-4
 - selecting current/system, 7-4

Dbmsinfo (function), 7-4
Dclgen declaration generator (utility), 5-7
Deadlock
 defined, 7-15
 handling, 7-15
Decimal
 literals, 3-11
Decimal (data type), 3-4, 4-7
Declarations
 begin declare section (statement), 8-2
 declare cursor (statement), 5-12, 8-15
 declare statement (statement), 8-22
 declare table (statement), 8-23
 Dynamic SQL statements, 8-22
 end declare (statement), 8-30
 host variable, 8-2
Defaults
 table columns, 9-6
Delete (statement), 8-24
Deleting
 delete (statement), 8-24
 rows, 5-15, 8-24
Delimited identifiers, 2-5
Describe (statement), 6-7, 6-13, 8-26
Destroying
 drop (statement), 8-29
Direct execute immediate (statement), 8-27
Disconnect (statement), 8-28
DMY format (dates), 3-7
Drop (statement), 8-29

E

e (terminal monitor command), B-4
ed (terminal monitor command), B-4
EDBC Products
 overview, 2-1
edit (terminal monitor command), B-4
editor (terminal monitor command), B-4
Embedded OpenSQL
 database access, 2-3

include (statement), 5-5
interactive vs, 2-3
keywords, 2-4
overview, 2-2
preprocessor, 2-2, 5-1
preprocessor errors, 5-5
sample program, 5-2
SQLCA, 5-3
variables, 5-4
Embedded SQL
 database access, 7-17
 obtaining run-time information, 8-48
End declare section (statement), 8-30
Endquery (statement), 8-49
Endselect (statement), 8-31
Error handling
 generic errors, C-7
 SQLSTATE, C-11
Errors
 errorno flag, 8-50
 generic, 7-8
 handling, 7-15, 8-88
 local, 7-8
Escape (clause)
 like (predicate), 4-12
Exec sql (keyword), 5-2
Execute (statement), 6-6, 6-9, 8-32
Execute immediate (statement), 6-6, 6-8, 8-35
Exists (predicate), 4-15
Exponential notation, 3-11

F

Fetch (statement), 8-42
Files
 external, 8-47
Floating point
 conversion, 4-6
 data type, 3-5
 literals, 3-11
 range, 3-5
Functions
 aggregate, 4-8

- avg, 4-8
- max, 4-8
- min, 4-8
- sum, 4-8

G

- g (terminal monitor command), B-4
- Generic errors, 7-8
 - list, C-7
- German format (dates), 3-7
- go (terminal monitor command), B-4
- Grant (statement)
 - described, 9-15
- Grant option, 9-17
- Group by (clause), 4-9, 8-62, 9-22

H

- Having (clause), 4-16, 8-62, 9-22
- Help (statement), 8-45

I

- i (terminal monitor command), B-5
- II_DECIMAL, 3-10
- II_EMBED_SET, 7-12, 7-14
- II_TIMEZONE_NAME, 3-8
- iialt_columns catalog, 10-17
- iicolumns catalog, 10-11
- iidbcapabilities catalog, 10-2
- iidbconstants catalog, 10-5
- iihistograms catalog, 10-18
- iiindex_columns catalog, 10-16
- iiprocedures catalog, 10-18
- iiregistrations catalog, 10-19
- iiiterr, 7-14

- iistats catalog, 10-17
- iisynonyms catalog, 10-20
- iitables catalog, 10-5
- iiviews catalog, 10-15
- In (predicate), 4-13
- Include (statement), 6-3, 8-47
 - Embedded OpenSQL, 5-5
- include (terminal monitor command), B-5
- Indexes
 - create index (statement), 8-8
 - destroying, 8-10, 8-29
 - sorting, 8-10
- Indicator variables
 - character data retrieval, 5-10
 - ESQL, 5-8
- Inquire_sql (statement), 7-5, 8-48, 8-51
- Insert (statement), 8-52
- Integers
 - data type, 3-3
 - literals, 3-11
 - range, 3-3
- Interactive OpenSQL
 - Embedded OpenSQL vs, 2-3
- ISO format (dates), 3-6
- ISO standard
 - delimited identifiers, 2-7
 - SQL keywords, A-18

K

- Keyboard keys
 - control, B-7
- Keywords
 - ISO, A-18

L

- Labels
 - Embedded SQL, 5-2
- Like (predicate), 4-11
 - escape clauses, 4-12

Limits

- float data type, 3-9
- integer data, 3-3
- number of columns in unique constraint, 9-8
- OpenSQL, 2-10

Literals

- decimal, 3-11
- floating point, 3-11
- integer, 3-11
- numeric, 3-10
- string, 3-10

Local errors, 7-8

Logical operators

- OpenSQL, 4-16

Loops

- endselect (statement), 8-31
- retrieve, 5-13, 8-31
- terminating, 8-31

M

Maximum (aggregate function), 4-8

MDY format (dates), 3-7

Minimum (aggregate function), 4-8

Multinational format (dates), 3-6

Multiple sessions, 8-51

- described, 7-17

Multi-statement transactions (MST), 9-8

N

Naming

- case, 2-5
- conventions, 2-4
- correlation names, 2-8

Nesting

- queries, 4-17

nobell (terminal monitor command), B-5

Not (logical operator), 4-16

Not null column format, 9-7

Now date constant, 3-8, 3-12

Null constant, 3-12

Null indicators, 5-8

Nullability

- table columns, 3-12, 9-7

Nulls

- aggregate functions, 3-13
- assignment, 4-5
- is null (predicate), 4-16
- null constant, 3-12
- OpenSQL, 3-12
- set functions, 4-8

Numeric

- literals, 3-10

Numeric data type

- assignment, 4-5
- range and precision, 3-3

O

Open (statement), 8-55

Open cursor (statement), 5-12

OpenSQL

- advanced techniques, 6-1
- dynamic, 6-1, 8-22, 8-26, 8-35, 8-57
- names, 2-4

Operating environment conventions, 1-2

Operations

- arithmetic, 4-6
- assignment, 4-3

Operators

- arithmetic, 4-1
- logical, 4-16

Or (logical operator), 4-16

Ownership

- tables, 8-11, 9-5

P

p (terminal monitor command), B-4

Patterns

- matching, 4-11

Precision

decimal (data type), 3-4, 4-7
floating point (data type), 3-5

Predicates, 4-11
 any-or-all, 4-14
 exists, 4-15
 in, 4-13
 is null, 4-16
 like, 4-11

Prepare (statement), 6-6, 6-9, 8-57

Preprocessor, 5-1

Primary Key Option Constraints, 9-12

Printing
 print (terminal monitor command), B-4

Privileges
 database, 9-18
 granting, 9-15

Programquit
 described, 7-14
 program quit (constant), 8-51, 8-84

Programs
 connecting to databases, 8-6
 source code, 8-47
 suspending execution, 7-14, 8-88

Q

Queries
 nested, 4-17
 repeat, 8-77
 subqueries, 4-17

R

r (terminal monitor command), B-4

read (terminal monitor command), B-5

Referential integrity, 9-9

Repeat queries
 select (statement), 8-77

reset (terminal monitor command), B-4

Restrictions
 characters in delimited identifiers, 2-6
 check constraints, 9-9

column default values, 9-6

database procedure parameters, 8-39

into clause in ISQL, 8-40

logical key (data type), 9-13

OpenSQL, 2-10

referential constraints, 9-11

SQLSTATE and database procedures, 7-8

unions, 8-72

retrieving, 8-49

Retrieving
 endselect (statement), 8-31
 select (statement), 8-62, 9-21
 status information, 2-2
 values, 8-62, 9-21
 values into variables, 8-42

Revoke (statement), 9-18

Rollback, 7-2, 8-61

Rows (in tables), 8-49
 counting, 4-9
 deleting, 5-15, 8-24
 inserting, 8-52
 rowcount constant, 8-51
 updating, 5-14

S

s (terminal monitor command), B-4

Scale
 decimal (data type), 3-4

Schemas
 creating, 9-1

Screen
 printing messages, 8-55

script (terminal monitor command), B-5

Search conditions
 OpenSQL, 4-16

Select (statement)
 embedded, 2-3, 8-74
 interactive, 8-62, 9-21
 query evaluation, 8-63
 select loop, 8-75

Set (statement), 8-81

Set autocommit (statement), 8-81

Set_sql (statement), 8-82

sh (terminal monitor command), B-4
shell (terminal monitor command), B-4
Sorting
 indexes, 8-10
Source code
 external files, 8-47
SQL
 descriptor area (SQLDA), 8-27
SQLCA (SQL Communications Area)
 described, 7-5
 error handling, 8-76, 8-78
 multiple sessions, 7-19
SQLDA (SQL Descriptor Area), 8-27
 execute procedure (statement), 8-39
Sqlprint, 8-89
SQLSTATE, 7-7, C-11
SQLVAR, 6-14
Standard Catalogs
 supported level, 10-1
Statement
 defined, 1-3
Status information
 obtaining, 7-5
Storage formats
 of data type, 3-9
Strings
 literals, 3-10
 varying length, 3-2
Structure
 variables, 5-6
Sum (aggregate function), 4-8
Sweden/Finland format (dates), 3-6
Syntax conventions, 1-3

T

Tables
 base, 8-13
 creating, 8-10, 9-4
 destroying, 8-29
 inserting rows, 8-52
 obtaining information about, 8-45

ownership, 8-11, 9-5
retrieving into/from, 8-62, 9-21
virtual, 8-13

Terminal Monitor, B-1

Time
 display format, 3-9
 selecting current/system, 7-4
 \time (terminal monitor command), B-4

Today date constant, 3-8, 3-12

Transactions
 commit (statement), 7-2, 8-4
 control statements, 7-2
 management, 7-1
 rolling back, 7-2, 8-61
 transaction (constants), 8-51

Truth functions, 4-17

Two phase commit
 connect (statement), 8-6

U

Unary operators, 4-2

Unique
 constraints, 9-8

Unique (clause), 8-9

Updating
 update (statement), 8-85

US format (dates), 3-6

User constant, 3-12

Utility, defined, 1-3

V

Values
 retrieving, 8-42, 8-62, 9-21

Varchar (data type), 3-2

Variable declarations
 begin declare section (statement), 8-2
 host languages, 5-5
 host variables, 8-2

Variables

host language, 5-4, 8-2, 8-30, 8-42
null indicator, 5-8
structure, 5-6

Version
standard catalogs, 10-1

Views
creating, 8-13
destroying, 8-29
printing, 8-46
updating, 8-14

W

w (terminal monitor command), B-5

Whenever (statement), 7-11, 8-88

Where (clause), 4-16, 8-62, 9-22

Wild card characters
select (statement), 8-64

With (clause)
EDBC product, 7-23

With null column format, 9-7

write (terminal monitor command), B-5

Y

YMD format (dates), 3-7

